Model A-C3 (Machine Code: B079/B082)

SERVICE MANUAL

MIMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

- 1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
- 2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
- 3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
- 4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
- 5. If the Start key is pressed before the copier completes the warm-up period (the Start key starts blinking red and green alternatively), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
- 6. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

- 1. Never operate the copier without the ozone filters installed.
- 2. Always replace the ozone filters with the specified ones at the specified intervals.
- 3. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

- 1. The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
- The NVRAM on the system control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

- 1. **SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL** Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
- 2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
- 3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
- 4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

LASER SAFETY

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.



Conventions in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

| Symbol | What it means |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| • | Refer to section number |
| CT | See Core Tech Manual for details |
| Ĩ | Screw |
| E) | Connector |
| C | E-ring |
| $\langle n \rangle$ | Clip ring |





Short Edge Feed (SEF)

Long Edge Feed (LEF)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| 1. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | . 1 | -1 |
|--|-----|-----|
| 1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS | 1 | 1-1 |
| 1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT | 1 | 1-2 |
| 1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL | 1 | 1-2 |
| 1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS | 1 | 1-3 |
| 1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS | 1 | 1-5 |
| 1.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART | 1 | 1-6 |
| 1.3 MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION | 1 | 1-7 |
| 1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1 | 1-7 |
| 1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1 | 1-8 |
| Development Unit and PCU | 1 | 1-9 |
| Toner Bottle | 1- | 12 |
| Paper Trays | 1- | 13 |
| Initialize TD Sensor and Developer | 1- | 15 |
| Set Paper Size for Paper Trays | 1- | 16 |
| Electrical Total Counter | 1- | 17 |
| HDD Caution Decal | 1- | 17 |
| Exposure Glass Cleaner | 1- | 17 |
| 1.4 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542) | 1- | 18 |
| 1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 18 |
| 1.4.2 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 19 |
| 1.5 1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544) | 1- | 23 |
| 1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 23 |
| 1.5.2 1-BIN TRAY INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 24 |
| 1.6 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION (B538) | 1- | 30 |
| 1.6.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 30 |
| 1.6.2 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 31 |
| 1.7 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION (B545) | 1- | 33 |
| 1.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 33 |
| 1.7.2 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 34 |
| 1.8 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION | 1- | 37 |
| 1.8.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 37 |
| 1.8.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 38 |
| 1.9 ARDF INSTALLATION (B541) | 1- | 41 |
| 1.9.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 41 |
| 1.9.2 ARDF INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 42 |
| 1.9.3 ARDF SKEW ADJUSTMENT | 1- | 45 |
| 1.10 LCT INSTALLATION (B543) | 1- | 46 |
| 1.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 46 |
| 1.10.2 LCT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 47 |
| 1.11 PLATEN COVER INSTALLATION (G329) | 1- | 49 |
| 1.12 BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION (B546) | 1- | 50 |
| 1.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1- | 50 |
| 1.12.2 BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1- | 51 |
| 1.13 1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408) | 1- | 56 |

| 1.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | . 1-56 |
|---|------------|
| 1.13.2 1000 SHEET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | . 1-57 |
| 1.13.5 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS | . 1-00 |
| 2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE | 2-1 |
| 2.1 PM TABLE | 2-1 |
| 3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT | 3-1 |
| 3.1 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS | 3-2 |
| 3.1.1 SPECIAL TOOLS | 3-2 |
| 3.1.2 LUBRICANTS | 3-2 |
| 3.2 LASER UNIT | 3-3 |
| 3.2.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS | 3-3 |
| | 3-4 |
| 3.3 PROTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU) | 0-C 3_6 |
| 3.3.2 DRUM | 3-0 |
| 3.3.3 PICK-OFF PAWLS | 3-9 |
| Pick-off pawl position adjustment | 3-9 |
| 3.3.4 CHARGE ROLLER AND CLEANING ROLLER | . 3-10 |
| 3.3.5 DRUM CLEANING BLADE 2 | . 3-11 |
| 3.3.6 DRUM CLEANING BLADE 1 | . 3-12 |
| | 2 1 2 |
| 3.4.2 FUSING UNIT SIDE FAN | 3-13 |
| 3.4.3 FUSING UNIT CORNER FAN | . 3-16 |
| 3.5 PAPER FEED | 3-17 |
| 3.5.1 IDLE ROLLER DUST BLADE | . 3-17 |
| 3.5.2 REGISTRATION ROLLER DUST BLADE | . 3-18 |
| 3.6 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS | . 3-19 |
| 3.6.1 IOB | . 3-19 |
| | . 3-20 |
| 3.7 HARD DISK, CONTROLLER BOARD | . 5-21 |
| 4. TROUBLESHOOTING | 4-1 |
| 4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS | 4-1 |
| 4.1.1 SUMMARY | 4-1 |
| 4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS | 4-2 |
| 4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS | 4-5 |
| 4.2.1 SENSORS | 4-5 |
| 4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS | 4-6 |
| 4.4 LEDS | 4-7 |
| 4.5 TEST POINTS | 4-7 |
| 5 SERVICE TABLES | 5_1 |
| 5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES | 5_1 |
| 5.1.1 SERVICE TABLE KEY | 5-1 |
| 5.1.2 SERVICE TABLES | 5-2 |

| SP1-xxx: Feed | 5-2 |
|--|------|
| SP2-xxx: Drum | 5-5 |
| SP3-xxx: Process | 5-14 |
| SP4-xxx: Scanner | 5-15 |
| SP5-xxx: Mode | 5-38 |
| SP6-xxx: Peripherals | 5-56 |
| SP7-xxx: Data Log | 5-58 |
| 5.1.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING: SP2-902 | 5-67 |
| Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: IPU Test Print) | 5-67 |
| Test Pattern Table: SP2-902-3 Printing Test Patterns | 5-68 |
| 5.1.4 INPUT CHECK | 5-69 |
| Main Machine Input Check: SP5-803 | 5-69 |
| ARDF Input Check: SP6-007 | 5-73 |
| 5.1.5 OUTPUT CHECK | 5-74 |
| Main Machine Output Check: SP5-804 | 5-74 |
| ARDF Output Check: SP6-008) | 5-76 |
| 5.1.6 SMC PRINT OUT LISTS: SP5-990 | 5-76 |
| 5.1.7 MEMORY CLEAR: SP5-801 | 5-77 |
| 5.2 DIP SWITCHES | 5-78 |
| 5.3 USING THE DEBUG LOG | 5-79 |
| 5.3.1 CAPTURING DEBUGGING INFORMATION | 5-79 |
| Switching On the Debug Log Feature | 5-79 |
| Setting the Timing for Debug Log Acquisition | 5-80 |
| Selecting a Module for Retrieval | 5-81 |
| 5.3.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG | 5-83 |
| Recording Errors Manually | 5-83 |
| Copying the Debug Log to the IC Card | 5-83 |
| Converting the Debug Log to Binary Data | 5-83 |
| Analyzing the Debug Log Binary Data | 5-84 |
| | |
| 6. DETAILS | 6-1 |
| 6.1 BOARD STRUCTURE | 6-2 |
| 6.1.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM | 6-2 |
| 6.1.2 CONTROLLER | 6-4 |
| 6.2 IMAGE PROCESSING | 6-7 |
| 6.2.1 OVERVIEW | 6-7 |
| 6.2.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT) | 6-8 |
| 6.2.3 AUTO IMAGE DENSITY (ADS) | 6-9 |
| 6.2.4 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT) | 6-10 |
| Overview | 6-10 |
| 6.2.5 IMAGE PROCESSING MODES | 6-11 |
| 6.2.6 SUMMARY OF IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS | 6-13 |
| 6.2.7 IMAGE PROCESSING STEPS AND RELATED SP MODES | 6-14 |
| Text Mode | 6-14 |
| Text/Photo Mode | 6-15 |
| Photo Mode | 6-16 |
| Pale (Low-Density Mode) | 6-17 |
| | |

| 6.2.8 PRE-FILTERING | 6-19 |
|--|------|
| 6.2.9 BACKGROUND ERASE | 6-20 |
| 6.2.10 INDEPENDENT DOT ERASE | 6-21 |
| 6.2.11 LINE WIDTH CORRECTION | 6-22 |
| 6.2.12 FILTERING | 6-23 |
| Interactive SP Codes | 6-23 |
| Text Mode MTF Filter | 6-27 |
| Text/Photo, Photo Mode Filter | 6-28 |
| Pale, Generation Mode Filter | 6-29 |
| Photo Mode Smoothing for Dithering | 6-30 |
| Photo Mode Grayscale | 6-30 |
| Photo Mode Image Quality | 6-31 |
| 6.2.13 OTHERS | 6-32 |
| Vertical Black Line Correction | 6-32 |
| Density Settings | 6-33 |
| ADS Level | 6-34 |
| 6.2.14 PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF SP MODES | 6-35 |
| Solving Problems | 6-35 |
| Recommended Settings for MTF Filters | 6-36 |
| 6.3 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU) | 6-38 |
| 6.3.1 OVERVIEW | 6-38 |
| 6.3.2 DRUM CLEANING | 6-39 |
| 6.4 DRUM CHARGE | 6-40 |
| 6.4.1 CORRECTION FOR PAPER WIDTH AND THICKNESS | 6-40 |
| 6.4.2 DEVELOPMENT BIAS | 6-41 |
| Mechanism | 6-41 |
| Correction for paper width and thickness (by-pass tray only) | 6-41 |
| 6.5 PAPER FEED | 6-42 |
| 6.5.1 PAPER REGISTRATION | 6-42 |
| 6.6 IMAGE FUSING AND PAPER EXIT | 6-43 |
| 6.6.1 CLEANING MECHANISM | 6-43 |
| 6.6.2 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER CLEANING | 6-44 |
| 6.6.3 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL | 6-46 |
| Temperature Control | 6-47 |
| Fusing Idling Temperature | 6-48 |
| 6.6.4 CPM DOWN FOR THICK PAPER | 6-49 |
| 6.6.5 COOLING AND OVERHEAT PROTECTION | 6-50 |
| 6.6.6 TONER SCATTER PREVENTION | 6-51 |

| SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-1 |
|---------------------------|--------|
| 1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-1 |
| 2. MACHINE CONFIGURATION | SPEC-3 |
| 3. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT | SPEC-5 |

BOOKLET FINISHER (B546)

| 1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION | B546-1 |
|--|---------|
| 1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT | B546-1 |
| | |
| 2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS | B546-2 |
| 2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM | B546-2 |
| 2.1.1 SHIFT TRAY MODE | B546-2 |
| A4/LT sideways or shorter | B546-2 |
| Longer than A4 sideways | B546-2 |
| 2.1.2 PROOF TRAY MODE | B546-3 |
| 2.1.3 BOOKLET STITCH MODE | B546-3 |
| 2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM | B546-4 |
| 2.3 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM | B546-5 |
| 2.4 PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM | B546-6 |
| 2.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM | B546-7 |
| 2.5.1 DRIVE | B546-7 |
| 2.5.2 MOVEMENT | B546-7 |
| Front and Rear Stapling | B546-7 |
| | |
| | |
| 2.7 SHIFT TRAY MECHANISM | |
| 2.8 BOOKLET UNIT GATE MECHANISM | |
| 2.9 RELAY ROLLER AND POSITIONING PLATE MECHANISM | |
| | |
| 2.11 BOOKLET UNIT JOGGER MOVEMENT MECHANISM | |
| | |
| 2.13 PAPER FOLDER MECHANISM | B546-16 |
| 3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT | B546-18 |
| 3.1 REMOVAL | B546-18 |
| 3.1.1 UPPER DOOR | |
| 3.1.2 UPPER REAR COVER | |
| 3.1.3 LOWER REAR COVER | |
| 3.1.4 TOP COVER | |
| 3.1.5 UPPER INNER COVER | B546-20 |
| 3.1.6 SHIFT TRAY UNIT | |
| 3.1.7 UPPER SHIFT GUIDE | B546-22 |
| 3.1.8 LOWER SHIFT GUIDE | B546-22 |
| 3.1.9 EXIT UNIT | B546-23 |

| 3.1.10 BUFFER ROLLER UNIT | B546-24 |
|-----------------------------------|---------|
| 3.1.11 STAPLER | B546-25 |
| 3.1.12 FINISHER BOARD | B546-26 |
| 3.1.13 BOOKLET UNIT | B546-27 |
| 3.1.14 FOLDER ROLLERS | B546-29 |
| 3.1.15 FOLDER PLATE | B546-32 |
| Removal | B546-32 |
| Reinstalling | B546-33 |
| 3.1.16 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT | B546-34 |
| Removal | B546-34 |
| Adjustment | B546-35 |
| 3.1.17 BOOKLET BOARD | B546-37 |
| 3.1.18 POSITIONING PLATE UNIT | B546-37 |
| 3.1.19 1ST AND 2ND BOOKLET UNIT G | ATES |
| 3.2 ADJUSTMENT | B546-39 |
| 3.2.1 SHIFT TRAY HEIGHT | B546-39 |
| 3.2.2 JOGGER FENCE POSITION | B546-40 |
| 3.2.3 STAPLING POSITION | B546-41 |
| 3.2.4 BOOKLET STAPLING POSITION. | B546-42 |

PRINTER OPTION (B548)

| 1. INSTALLATION | |
|--|--|
| 1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 1-1 |
| 1.2 PRINTER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 1-2 |
| 1.2.1 CONTROLLER BOARD AND HDD REMOVAL | 1-2 |
| 1.2.2 PRINTER CONTROLLER INSTALLATION | 1-3 |
| Paper Limit Sensor Installation | 1-4 |
| Paper Sensor Installation | 1-5 |
| Operation Panel Keytops | 1-6 |
| 1.3 POSTSCRIPT 3 (G354-17) | 1-7 |
| 1.4 128 MB MEMORY (G331) | 1-8 |
| 1.5 NIB (B525) | 1-9 |
| 1.6 IEEE 1394 FIREWIRE (G336) | 1-10 |
| 1.7 USB 2.0 (B525) | 1-12 |
| 1.8 IEEE 802.11B B515 (WIRELESS LAN) | 1-14 |
| 1.9 BLUETOOTH (G354-04) | 1-18 |
| 1.10 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS | 1-20 |
| | |
| 3. SERVICE TABLES | |
| 3.1 SCANNER SERVICE MODE | |
| 3.1.1 SCANNER PROGRAM MODE TABLE | 3-1 |
| 4 DETAILS | 4-1 |
| 4.1 ETHERNET BOARD | <i></i> |
| 4 1 1 FTHERNET BOARD LAYOUT | |
| 4 1 2 ETHERNET BOARD OPERATION | |
| | ······································ |

| 4.2 IEEE1394 BOARD (FIREWIRE) | |
|--|--------|
| 4.2.1 OVERVIEW | 4-3 |
| 4.3 USB | |
| 4.3.1 SPECIFICATIONS | |
| 4.3.2 USB 1.1/2.0 | |
| 4.3.3 USB CONNECTORS | |
| 4.3.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT | |
| 4.3.5 REMARKS ABOUT USB | |
| Related SP Mode | |
| 4.4 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN) | |
| 4.4.1 SPECIFICATIONS | |
| LED Indicators | |
| 4.4.2 TRANSMISSION MODES | |
| Ad Hoc Mode | |
| Infrastructure Mode | |
| 4.4.3 SECURITY FEATURES | |
| Using the SSID in Ad hoc mode | |
| 4.4.4 WIRELESS LAN TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES | |
| Communication Status | |
| Channel Settings | |
| Troubleshooting Procedure | |
| 4.5 BLUETOOTH | 4-13 |
| 4.5.1 SPECIFICATIONS | 4-13 |
| 4.5.2 BLUETOOTH PROFILES | |
| 4.5.3 BLUETOOTH SECURITY FEATURES | |
| | / |
| SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-1 |
| 1. SYSTEM COMPONENTS | SPEC-1 |
| 2. LED INDICATORS | SPEC-1 |
| 3. PRINTER SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-2 |
| 4. USB SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-2 |
| 5. IEEE 802.11B SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-3 |
| 6. SCANNER SPECIFICATIONS | SPEC-3 |
| 7. SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES | SPEC-4 |
| 7.1 PRINTER | SPEC-4 |
| PRINTER DRIVERS | SPEC-4 |
| UTILITY SOFTWARE | SPEC-4 |
| 7.2 SCANNER | SPEC-5 |
| SCANNER DRIVER | SPEC-5 |
| | SPEC-5 |

1. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.



1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Installation

1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT

- 1. Temperature Range: 10 °C to 32 °C (50 °F to 90 °F)
- 2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH
- 3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight.)
- 4. Ventilation: Room air should turn over at least 30 m³/hr/person
- 5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.10 mg/m³ (2.7 x 10/6 oz/yd³)
- 6. Avoid areas exposed to sudden temperature changes:1) Areas directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner.2) Areas directly exposed to heat from a heater.
- 7. Do not place the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gases.
- 8. Do not install the machine at any location over 2,000 m (6,500 ft.) above sea level.
- 9. Place the main machine on a strong and level base. Inclination on any side should be no more than 5 mm (0.2").
- 10. Do not place the machine where it may be subjected to strong vibrations.

1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

Front to back:Within 5 mm (0.2") of levelRight to left:Within 5 mm (0.2") of level

1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

Place the main machine near the power source, providing clearance as shown:



NOTE: The 75 cm (29.5") recommended for the space at the front is for pulling out the paper tray only. If the operator stands at the front of the main machine, more space is required.





B079I014.WMF

1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

- 1. Make sure that the wall outlet is near the main machine and easily accessible. Make sure the plug is firmly inserted in the outlet.
- 2. Avoid multi-wiring.
- 3. Be sure to ground the machine.
- Input voltage level: North America 120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12.5 A Europe/Asia 220 V ~ 240V, 50 Hz/60 Hz: more than 6.8 A
- 2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: ± 10 %
- 3. Never set anything on the power cord.

Installation

1.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART

The following flow chart shows how to install the optional units more efficiently.



B0791510.0010

Bridge Unit: Needed for the finishers and external output tray.

Paper Tray Unit: Needed for LCT and finishers.

Other requirements: See Overall Machine Information – Installation Option Table.

Q'ty

1.3 MAIN MACHINE INSTALLATION

1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| | - | - |
|-----|---|---|
| 1. | Operation Instructions – System Setting | 1 |
| 2. | Operation Instructions – Copy Reference | 1 |
| 3. | Exposure Glass Cleaner Holder | 1 |
| 4. | Exposure Glass Cleaner | 1 |
| 5. | Paper Size Decal | 1 |
| 6. | Middle Front Cover | 1 |
| 7. | NECR – English (-17, -57 Machines) | 1 |
| 8. | NECR – Multi-Language (-19, -21, -27, -28, -29, -67 Machines) | 1 |
| 9. | HDD Caution Decals (-17, -19, -21, -28, -29, -57 Machines) | 1 |
| 10. | Model Name Decal (-17, -29, -57 Machines) | 1 |
| 11. | Mode Name Decals – NRG (-22, -62 Machines) | 1 |
| 12. | Stamp (-17 Machine) | 1 |
| 13. | EU Safety Information (-22, -24, -26, -27, -62, -66, -67 Machines) | 1 |
| 14. | Blank Decals – NRG (-22, -62 Machines) | 1 |
| 15. | Operation Panel Indicator Decals (-22, -24, -26, -27, -62, -64, -66, -67 Machines) | 1 |
| 16. | Address Information Sheet – China (-21 Machine) | 1 |
| 17. | Paper Caution Sheet – China (-21 Machine) | 1 |
| 18. | Energy Start Sticker (-26, -66 Machines) | 1 |

1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



1. Remove the main machine from the box, and remove all shipping retainers and tapes.

NOTE: Store all shipping retainers as you remove them. You will need them if the machine is moved to another location in the future.

- 2. Remove scanner cushion [A], and install the end fence [B].
- 3. Pull out the paper trays and remove all tape and bottom plate stoppers [C].
- On the right side of the machine, open the by-pass tray, duplex unit, and transfer right cover, and then remove all the shipping retainers [D]
 NOTE: If the paper tray unit is to be installed, do this now. (~1.4)
- 5. If the paper tray unit is not to be installed, install the middle front cover [E] (provided in the second paper tray).

Installation

Development Unit and PCU



- 1. Open the front cover and remove the tape and retainers [A].
- 2. Loosen [B] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$) and rotate the bracket [C].
- 3. Open the right cover [D].
- 4. Raise the lever [E]
- 5. Holding the PCU [F] as shown slide it out and place it on a clean flat surface.
- 6. Remove clamps and wire [G].



- Spread a large piece of paper on a flat surface.
 NOTE: Make sure the area is free of pins, paper clips, staples, etc. to avoid attraction to the magnetic development roller.
- 8. Slide the development unit [A] out and place it on the paper.
- 9. Remove the tape and tag [B] from the development unit
- 10. Remove the entrance seal plate [C] (\bigcirc x 2).



- 11. Remove the development roller unit [A], and set it on the paper.
- 12. Pour the developer [B] into the development unit.
 - **NOTE:** The developer lot number is embossed on the end of the developer package. Do not discard the package until you have recorded the lot number. (<a>T-15)
 - 1) Pour approximately 1/3 of the developer evenly along the length of the development unit.
 - 2) Rotate the drive gear [C] to work the developer into the unit.
 - 3) Repeat until all the developer is in the development unit.
 - 4) Continue to turn the drive gear until the developer is even with the top of the unit.
- 13. Reassemble the development unit.

NOTE: Make sure that the earth plate [D] is positioned correctly.

14. Re-install the development unit and PCU.



Toner Bottle

- 1. Raise the toner bottle holder lever [A], push the lever [B] to the side, and then pull the toner bottle holder [C] out.
- Shake the new toner bottle well.
 NOTE: Do not remove the toner bottle cap [D] until after shaking.
- 3. Unscrew the bottle cap and set the bottle in the holder. **NOTE:** Do not touch the inner bottle cap [E].
- Push the toner bottle holder into the main machine until it locks in place, and then lower the holder lever to secure the toner bottle.
 NOTE: The holder lever cannot be lowered unless the toner bottle is installed.

Installation

Paper Trays



- 1. Open the 1st paper tray, and then press down on the right side of the lock [A] switch to unlock the side fences.
- 2. Press in on the sides of the fence release [B], and slide the side fences [C] to the appropriate mark for the paper size.
- 3. Turn the dial [D] to the correct setting for the paper size.
- 4. Pinch the sides of the bottom fence [E] and move it to the appropriate mark for the paper size, then load the paper.
- 5. Check the position of the stack.
 - Confirm that there is no gap between the stack and the side fences. If you see a gap, adjust the position of the side fences.
 - After loading the stack, confirm that the right side of the stack is not on top of both cushions.



- 6. Press down the lock [A] to lock the side fences.
- 7. Attach the appropriate paper size decal [B] to the paper tray.
- 8. Paper size decals are also used for the optional paper tray unit. Keep any remaining decals for use with the paper tray unit.
- 9. Repeat this procedure to load paper in the 2nd paper tray.

Initialize TD Sensor and Developer

- 1. Connect the main machine to the power outlet, switch on the main machine, and wait for the fusing unit to warm up.
- 2. On the operation panel, press Clear Mode 🔊.
- 3. Use the number keys to enter 107.
- 4. Press and hold Clear/Stop ^(*) for three seconds.
- 5. On the touch-panel, press Copy SP.
- 6. Press SP Direct to highlight "SP Direct", enter 2801, and then press #.



- 7. When the message prompts you to enter the lot number of the developer, enter the 7-digit lot number, press [Yes], and then press [Execute] on the touch-panel. This initializes the TD sensor.
 - **NOTE:** The lot number is printed on the end of the developer package. Recording the lot number could help troubleshoot problems later. If the lot number is unavailable, enter any seven-digit number.
- 8. Press SP Direct to highlight "SP Direct" and enter 2805, press (#), and then press Execute on the touch-panel. This initializes the developer.
- 9. Press Exit twice to return to the copy window.

Set Paper Size for Paper Trays

1. Press User Tools/Counter 🕅.

| ⊗ User Tools/Counter | | | | 14NOV 2000 11:48 |
|----------------------|----|------------------------------------|-----|------------------|
| | ۵ | Copier/Document Server Settings | ¢¢ | 日本語 |
| 尼岛 Sustem Settings | ¢₽ | Facsimile Settings | | |
| | Ъ | Printer Settings | | |
| | 4 | Scanner Settings | 123 | Counter |
| | | | | B079I501 WMF |

2. On the touch panel, press System Settings.

| 🗟 System Settii | ıgs | | | | | 14NOV 2000 Exit | 11:52 |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|-------|----------------|-----------------|-----|--------------------|---------------|
| Select one of the following default : | settings. | | | | | | |
| General Features Paper Si: | e Setting Timer Setting | Inter | rface Settings | File Transfer | Key | y Operator Tools | |
| Panel Tone | ON | | Functi | on Reset Timer | | 3 seconds | |
| Warm Up Notice | ON | | Ou | tput: Copier | | Internal tray 1 | |
| Copy Count Display | Up | | Output: | Document Server | | Internal tray 1 | |
| Function Priority | Copier | | Outp | ut: Facsimile | | Internal tray 1 | |
| Print Priority | Display mode | | | 1/2 | | Previous | v Next |

B079I502.WMF

- 3. Press the Paper Size Setting tab.
- 4. Press the button for the tray to change.
- 5. Change the setting and press the [OK] button.
- 6. Repeat for each tray installed.
- 7. Press Exit twice to return to the main display
 - The 1st and 2nd paper trays are provided with paper size dial selectors. The dial settings on the paper trays have priority over the UP settings. However, if you select the asterisk (*) position on the paper size dial, you can select the paper size with the UP setting.
 - The 3rd and 4th paper trays of the paper output unit are not equipped with paper-size selection dials, so you must do the Paper Size UP settings for the 3rd and 4th trays.
- Check the copy quality and machine operation.
 NOTE: The test pattern print procedure is slightly different for this machine. Use SP2-902 and select 2 for the IPU Test Print or 3 for the Print Test Patterns. (
 Chapter 5, 5.1.3 Test Pattern Printing)

17 January, 2003

Electrical Total Counter

The electrical total counter no longer requires initialization. The new incrementing counter is set to "0" at the factory.

NOTE: SP7825 (Total Counter Reset) remains in the Service but executing this SP has no effect.

HDD Caution Decal



1. Attach the HDD Caution decal [A] to the front cover.

Exposure Glass Cleaner



- 1. Attach the exposure glass cleaner holder [B] to the left side of the machine.
- Place the exposure glass cleaner [C] inside the holder.
 NOTE: The exposure glass cleaner is used to clean the ARDF exposure glass, the glass strip to the left of the large exposure glass.

1.4 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542)

1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

Q'ty

| 1. | Knob Screw – M3 | 1 |
|----|------------------------|---|
| 2. | Knob Screw – M4 | 1 |
| 3. | Joint Bracket | 1 |
| 4. | Front Stand | 1 |
| 5. | Rear Stand | 1 |
| 6. | Stand Bracket | 1 |
| 7. | NECR | 1 |
| 8. | Installation Procedure | 1 |

Installation

1.4.2 PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



B542I112.WMF

Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

- 1. Unpack the paper tray unit.
- 2. Remove all tape and shipping materials.
- 3. Remove the paper trays [A].



- 4. Remove the middle front cover [A] and pull out the front handles [B].
- 5. Using the front handles and rear handles, lift the machine and hold it over the paper tray unit [C].
- Slowly lower the machine onto the paper tray unit with the pegs [D] aligned with the peg holes on the bottom of the machine.
 NOTE: Do not hold the scanner unit.
- 7. Re-install the middle front cover [A].
- 8. Attach the spring washer [E] to the short knob screw [F]. Then, secure the paper tray unit.
- 9. Open the right cover of the paper tray unit [G].
- 10. Secure the joint bracket [H] (1 long knob screw).
- 11. Remove the connector cover [I] of the main machine ($\hat{\not} x$ 1).
- 12. Connect the paper tray unit harness [J] to the main machine and reinstall the connector cover.

PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B542)



- 13. Install the front and rear stands [A] as shown above.
- 14. Install the stand bracket [B].



- 15. Load paper into the paper tray and install the paper trays.
- 16. Attach the appropriate tray decals [A] which are included in the accessory box for the main machine.
- 17. Turn on the ac switch.
- 18. Turn the paper size dial to the correct setting for the paper size.
- 19. Check the machine's operation and copy quality.

1.5 1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544)

1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| Q'tv | / |
|------|---|
| | |

| 1. | Ground Bracket | 1 |
|-----|-------------------------|---|
| 2. | Connector Cover | 1 |
| 3. | Base Cover | 1 |
| 4. | Arm Cover | 1 |
| 5. | Copy Tray | 1 |
| 6. | Mylar Strip | 2 |
| 7. | Stepped Screw – M3 x 8 | 5 |
| 8. | Screw –M3 x 8 | 2 |
| 9. | Screw – M4 x 7 | 1 |
| 10. | Tapping Screw – M3 x 6 | 2 |
| 11. | Tapping Screw – M3 x 14 | 1 |
| 12. | Tapping Screw – M3 x 8 | 1 |
| 13. | Installation Procedure | 1 |

1.5.2 1-BIN TRAY INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



B544I114.WMFF

CAUTION Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

- Remove Scanner Unit NOTE: If the ARDF is installed, remove the ARDF before removing the scanner unit.
 - 1) Remove the connector cover [A].
 - 2) Disconnect the scanner cable [B].
 - 3) Remove the scanner unit [C] ($\hat{P} \times 3$).

1-BIN TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION (B544)



- 2. Unpack the 1-bin tray unit and remove the tapes.
- Remove the front bracket [A] (
 ^A x 1) and rear bracket [B] (
 ^A x 1) from the top
 of the paper exit cover [C].
- 4. Remove the paper exit cover [C] ($\hat{P} \times 4$).
- 5. Cut away two covers [D] from the base cover [E].
- 6. Trim the edges so they are smooth.
- 7. Install the base cover [E] (F x 3: stepped screw).
- 8. Set the 1-bin tray unit [F] on the base cover and slide onto the heads of the stepped screws.


- 9. Secure the 1-bin tray unit [A] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1 \text{ M3 x14}$).
- 10. Remove the cover [B].
- 11. Install the grounding bracket [C] ($\mathscr{F} \times 2 \text{ M3 x 6}$).
- 12. Connect the harness [D].
- 13. Install the connector cover [E] (🖗 x 1 M3 x 8)
- 14. Re-install the front bracket [F] (²/_ℓ x 2 M4 x 7, M4 x 10) and the rear bracket [G] (²/_ℓ x 1 M4 x 10).



15. Attach the copy tray

Bridge Unit (B538) has not been installed:

- 1) Secure [A] (stepped $\hat{P} \times 2$) into the side of the 1-bin tray housing.
- 2) Attach the copy tray [B] to the stepped screws.

Bridge Unit (B538) has been installed

- 1) Open the cover of the bridge unit [C].
- 2) First, remove the copy tray bracket [D] (\bigcirc x 1).
- 3) Install the copy tray bracket (x 1: tapping screw).
- 4) Re-install the copy tray [E] (0 x 1).



B544I104.WMF



- 16. Remove the scanner stand cover [A] ($\mathscr{F} \times 2$).
- 17. To adjust the height of the scanner stand, first remove [B] ($\hat{\not}$ x 2) to release the scanner stand [C].
- 18. Raise the scanner stand until the next set of screw holes in the main frame can be seen through the screw holes in the scanner stand.
- 19. Secure the stand ($\mathscr{F} \times 2: \textcircled{1}, \textcircled{2}$) and install the arm cover [D] ($\mathscr{F} \times 1$).

Installation



- 20. Attach two mylar strips [A] to the scanner stand [B].
- 21. Reinstall the scanner stand cover.
- 22. Reinstall the scanner unit.
- 23. Turn on the main switch and check the 1-bin tray unit operation.

1.6 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION (B538)

1.6.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| 1. | Stepped Screw | 2 |
|----|------------------------|---|
| 2. | Connector Cover | 1 |
| 3. | Exit Mylar | 2 |
| 4. | Installation Procedure | 1 |

1.6.2 BRIDGE UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

- 1. Unpack the bridge unit and remove all tapes shipping retainers.
- 2. Remove the inner tray [A].
- 3. On the side of the machine, remove the three small covers [B].

If the optional external output tray (A825) will be installed (instead of a finisher), do Step 4.

- 4. Remove the two small covers [C].
- 5. Remove the cover [D] ($\hat{\beta} x 1$).
- 6. Remove the cap [E].



7. If an optional finisher is to be installed, attach two mylars [A] to the bridge unit.

- 8. Remove the cover [B].
- 9. Install the bridge unit [C] ($\hat{\beta}$ x 2).
- 10. Connect the bridge unit I/F harnesses [D] (⊑^{IJ} x 2).
- 11. Install the connector cover [E].
- 12. Turn on the main switch and check the bridge unit operation (make sure that there are no paper jams).

1.7 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION (B545)

1.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| 1. | Front Joint Bracket 1 | |
|----|--------------------------|---|
| 2. | Rear Joint Bracket 1 | I |
| 3. | Shift Tray 2 | 2 |
| 4. | Screw – M4 x 8 2 | 2 |
| 5. | Screw – M4 x 12 5 | 5 |
| 6. | Ground Plate 1 | l |
| 7. | Installation Procedure 1 | l |

1.7.2 TWO-TRAY FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

- **NOTE:** The bridge unit (B538) and paper tray unit (B542) must be installed before installing this finisher.
- 1. Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and shipping retainers from outside the unit [A].
- 2. Open the front door [B] and remove all tapes and shipping materials from inside the finisher unit.
- Save the retainer [C] and other shipping material.
 NOTE: The retainer [C] must be re-installed in the finisher before moving or shipping the finisher to another location.



- Install the left joint bracket [A] (^A x 2 M4 x 12) and right joint bracket [B] (^A x 2 M4 x 12).
- 5. Attach the ground plate [C] (²/₂ x 1 M4 x 12) to the center of the paper tray unit as shown.
- 6. Open the front door of the finisher, and pull out the locking lever [D] ($\hat{\not}$ x 1).
- 7. Push the finisher to the side of the machine with the holes in the finisher aligned with the joint brackets, and then dock the finisher against the machine.
- 8. Push in the locking lever and secure it ($\hat{k} \times 1$), then close the front door.



- 9. Install two trays [A] ($\mathscr{F} \times 1 \text{ each}$).
- 10. Connect the finisher cable [B] to the main machine below the right, rear handle.
- 11. Turn on the main switch and check the finisher operation.

1.8 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION

1.8.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| 1. | Punch unit | 1 |
|----|---------------|---|
| 2. | Sensor arm | 1 |
| 3. | Hopper | 1 |
| 4. | Step screw | 1 |
| 5. | Spring | 1 |
| 6. | Spacer (2 mm) | 1 |
| 7. | Spacer (1 mm) | 1 |
| 8. | Tapping screw | 1 |
| 9. | Tapping screw | 2 |

1.8.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



Switch off the main machine and unplug its power cord. If the Two-Tray Finisher is installed, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine. (<1.7)

- 1. Unpack the punch unit and remove all tapes and shipping retainers.
- 2. Open the front door and remove the rear cover [A] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} x4$).
- 3. Remove the bracket [B] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} x2$) and paper guide [C] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} x1$).



- 4. Remove the hopper cover [A] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$).
- 5. Install the sensor bracket [B] (stepped $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$).
- 6. Install the spring [C].
- 7. Install the 2 mm spacer [D].
- 8. Install the punch unit [E] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$, stepped $\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$)



- Connect the harnesses [A] and clamp them as shown.
 NOTE: No special DIP switch settings are required for this punch unit. The punch unit sends an identification signal to the machine board so it knows what type of punch unit has been installed.
- 10. Slide the hopper [B] into the machine.
- 11. Fasten the two 1 mm spacers [C] to the rear frame for future adjustment. **NOTE:** The spacers are used to adjust the horizontal positioning of the holes.
- 12. Reassemble the finisher and check the punch operation.

1.9 ARDF INSTALLATION (B541)

1.9.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| 1. | Stepped Screw | 2 |
|----|-----------------------------|---|
| 2. | Screw – M4 x 10 | 2 |
| 3. | Attention Decal - Scanner | 1 |
| 4. | Attention Decal – Top Cover | 1 |
| 5. | Installation Procedure | 1 |

1.9.2 ARDF INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



B541I904.WMF

CAUTION Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the ARDF and remove all tapes and shipping retainers.



- 2. Attach and tighten [A] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$ stud).
- Mount the ARDF by aligning the screw keyholes [B] of the ARDF support plate over the stud screws, and slide the ARDF toward the front of the machine.
 NOTE: To avoid damaging the ARDF, hold it as shown in the illustration.
- 4. Secure the ARDF [C] ($\hat{\beta}^2 \times 2$).
- 5. Connect the I/F cable [D] (\mathbb{Z} x 1) to the main machine.



B541I903.WMF

- 6. Peel off the platen sheet [A] and place it on the exposure glass.
- 7. Line up the rear left corner of the platen sheet flush against corner [B] on the exposure glass.
- 8. Close the ARDF.
- 9. Attach the decal [C] to the top cover as shown, choosing the language most suitable for the machine installed.
- 10. Attach the decal [D] to the cover so that the arrow on the decal lines up with the groove [E] of the left scale as shown. As with step 9, choose the language most suitable for the machine installed.
- 11. Turn on the main switch.
- 12. Check the ARDF operation and copy quality. Be sure to check and adjust the registration for the ARDF with the SP modes

1.9.3 ARDF SKEW ADJUSTMENT



B079R724.WMFF

- 1. Remove the tape [A] covering the elliptical hole.
- 2. Remove right screw [B] and install it into the elliptical hole [C].
- 3. Move the right side of the ARDF forward or back to adjust the position then tighten the screw.

1.10 LCT INSTALLATION (B543)

1.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description

| 1. | Joint Pin | 2 |
|----|--------------------------|---|
| 2. | Stepped Screw M3 x 18 | 4 |
| 3. | Magnet Cover | 1 |
| 4. | NECR (-17, -27 machines) | 1 |
| 5. | Installation Procedure | 1 |

1.10.2 LCT INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



⚠CAUTION Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

NOTE: The Paper Tray Unit (B542) must be installed before installing the LCT.

- 1. Unpack the LCT and remove the tapes.
- 2. Open the right cover of the paper tray unit [A].
- Open the lower right cover [B] and cut the holding band [C].
 NOTE: When cutting the holding band, the upper part of the band should be cut as shown. Otherwise, paper jams may occur.
- 4. Remove the lower right cover.



- 6. Install the joint pins [A].
- 7. Push the release lever [B] and slide the LCT to the right (front view).
- 8. Hang the LCT [C] on the joint pins, then secure the brackets [D] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 4$).
- 9. Return the LCT to the previous position and connect the LCT cable [E].
- 10. Open the LCT cover and load the paper.
- 11. Turn on the ac switch and check the LCT operation.

1.11 PLATEN COVER INSTALLATION (G329)



- 1. Install [A] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$) on the top cover as shown.
- 2. Position the platen cover bracket [B] on the heads of the stud screws and slide the platen cover [C] to the left.

1.12 BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION (B546)

1.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list.



Description

| 1. Upper Tray | 1 |
|----------------------------|---|
| 2. Shift Tray | 1 |
| 3. Tapping Screw -M4 x 6 | 2 |
| 4. Rail Ass'y | 1 |
| 5. Joint Bracket | 1 |
| 6. Tapping Screw - M4 x 16 | 8 |
| 7. Rail Bracket | 1 |
| 8. Tapping Screw - M4 x 6 | 1 |
| 9. Harness Cover | 1 |
| 10. Sensor Feeler | 1 |

Installation

1.12.2 BOOKLET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



B546I104.WMF

CAUTION Keep the power cord unplugged when starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes and shipping retainers.





- 2. Open the front under door and pull out the staple unit [A].
- 3. Remove the stapler unit lock plate [B] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$).
- 4. Push in the stapler unit and shut the front lower door.
- 5. Remove the right lower cover [C] ($\hat{F} \times 4$).
- 6. Remove the front pressure release bracket [D] ($\mathscr{F} \times 1$).
- 7. Remove the rear pressure release bracket [E] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$).
- 8. Reattach the cover [C].



Installation

B546I106.WMF



- 9. Set the hooks [A] of the shift tray [B] in the notches in the shift tray bracket, and secure the tray with two M4 x 6 screws.
- 10. Connect the shift tray sensor harness [C].
- 11. Install the harness cover [D] (2 hooks).



- 12. Install the upper tray [A] (2 pins).
- 13. Attach the sensor feeler [B] (2 pins).
- 14. Remove the stand bracket [C].
- 15. Attach the rail [D] to the rail bracket [E] as shown.
- 16. Install the rail bracket [F] on the left lower cover of the copier ($\hat{\not}$ x 4).



- 17. Install the joint bracket [A] on the left side of the copier ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 4$).
- 18. Secure the rail [B] to the booklet finisher with 1 M4 screw.
- 19. Align the finisher on the joint bracket and lock the 2 hooks [C] of the finisher on the joint bracket.
- 20. Connect the finisher cable [D] to the copier.
- 21. Turn on the main switch and check the finisher operation.

1.13 1000 SHEET FINISHER (B408)

1.13.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.



Description

| | 1 Front Joint Bracket | 1 |
|-----|--|---|
| | 2 Rear Joint Bracket *1 | 1 |
| | 3 Rear Joint Bracket | 1 |
| | 4 Grounding Plate | 1 |
| | 5 Copy Tray | 1 |
| | 6 Staple Position Decal | 1 |
| | 7 Screw - M4 x 14 | 4 |
| | 8 Knob Screw - M4 x 10 | 1 |
| | 9 Screw - M3 x 8 | 1 |
| | 10 Knob Screw - M3 x 8 | 1 |
| *1. | Rear joint bracket is not required for these models. | |

1.13.2 1000 SHEET FINISHER INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

- 1. The following options must be installed before installing this finisher.
 - Bridge Unit (B538)
 - Paper Tray Unit (B542)
- Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes.
 NOTE: Be sure to keep screw [A]. It will be needed to secure the grounding plate in Step 3.



- Install the grounding plate [C] to the finisher (²/_ℓ x2 M3 x 8).
 NOTE: Use the screw removed in step 1 and the screw from the accessory box.
- 4. Open the front door [D] then pull the locking lever [E].
- 5. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.
- 6. Secure the locking lever ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 1$ knob screw M3 x 8).
- 7. Close the front door.
- 8. Install the copy tray [F] ($\overset{\circ}{P}$ x 1 knob screw M4 x 10).
- 9. Connect the finisher cable [G] to the main machine below the right rear handle.



- 10. Attach the staple position decal [A] to the ARDF as shown.
- 11. Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.

1.13.3 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS

- 1. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.
- 2. Enter the printer user mode and print the configuration page.

User Tools> Printer Settings> List Test Print> Config. Page

NOTE: The same data can also be printed by executing SP1-004 – Print Summary. All installed options are listed in the "System Reference" column.

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

2.1 PM TABLE

NOTE: Amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints.

Symbol key: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricate, I: Inspect

| B079/B082 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|----------------------------------|----|------|------|------|---|
| SCANNER/OPTICS | | | | | • |
| Reflector | | С | С | С | Optics cloth |
| 1st Mirror | | С | С | С | Optics cloth |
| 2nd Mirror | | С | С | С | Optics cloth |
| 3rd Mirror | | С | С | С | Optics cloth |
| Scanner Guide Rails | | I | I | I | Do not use alcohol. Lubricate if necessary. |
| Platen Sheet Cover | С | I | I | I | Dry cloth or alcohol. Replace platen sheet if required. |
| Exposure Glass | | С | С | С | Dry cloth or alcohol |
| Toner Shield Glass | | С | С | С | Optics cloth |
| APS Sensor | | С | С | С | Dry cloth or alcohol |
| Exposure Glass (Sheet through) | | С | С | С | Dry cloth or alcohol |
| | | | | | |
| DRUM (OPC) AREA | | - | | - | |
| Charge Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Charge Roller Cleaning Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Drum Cleaning Blade 1 | | R | R | R | |
| Drum Cleaning Blade 2 | | R | R | R | |
| Quenching Lamp | | | С | | Dry cloth |
| Pick-off Pawls | | R | R | R | |
| Spurs | | С | С | С | Dry cloth or alcohol |
| ID Sensor | | С | С | С | Perform SP3-001-2 after blower brush cleaning. |
| Cleaning Entrance Seal | | С | С | С | Blower brush. Replace if required. |
| Side Seal | | | I | | |
| | | | | | |
| B003/B004B006/B007 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|--------------------------|----|------|--------|----------|--|
| DEVELOPMENT UNIT | | · | | | |
| Development Drive | | I | I | I | |
| Gears | | I | | 1 | |
| Development Filter | | R | R | R | |
| Developer | | | R | | |
| Entrance Seal | | I | | | |
| Side Seal | | I | | | |
| Development Roller | | С | С | С | Dry cloth |
| | | | | | |
| PAPER FEED | | | | | |
| Registration Roller | С | С | С | С | Water or alcohol. |
| Idle Roller Dust Blade | | | | | Detach and tap gently on flat |
| | | С | C | C | surface to empty. Blower |
| | | | | | brush. |
| Registration Roller Dust | | С | R | С | Blower brush. |
| Blade | 1 | | | | Chack counter value for |
| Paper Feeu Roller | 1 | | R D | R D | |
| | 1 | | R D | R | $\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} $ |
| PICK-up Koller | I | ĸ | ĸ | ĸ | the roller do SP7-816 to |
| Paper Feed Roller (by- | I | R | R | R | reset counter. |
| Pass leeu lable) | | | - | | - |
| Separation Roller (by- | I | R | R | R | |
| Dick_un Poller | | _ | + | | - |
| (Ry-nass feed table) | I | R | R | R | |
| Paper Feed Guides | | C | C | С | Water or alcohol |
| Relay Rollers | | - C | - C | C | Water or alcohol |
| Rottom Plate Pad | | C | - C | <u> </u> | Water or alcohol |
| Bottom Plate Pad (By- | | | | | Water or alcohol |
| nass feed) | | С | С | С | |
| Registration Sensor | | C C | C | C | Blower brush |
| Paper Feed Roller Gear | | | | | Silicone Grease G-501 See |
| | | L | L | L | note below.* ¹ |
| Upper Relav Sensor | | С | С | С | Blower Brush |
| DUPLEX UNIT | | - | - | - | |
| Upper Transport Roller | | С | С | С | Water or alcohol. |
| Lower Transport Roller | | C | C | C | Water or alcohol. |
| | | - | - | - | |
| TRANSFER BELT UNIT | | | | | |
| Transfer Belt | С | R | R | R | Drv cloth |
| Transfer Belt Cleaning | - | | | | |
| Blade | | R | R | R | |
| Transfer Belt Rollers | | С | С | С | Drv cloth |
| Entrance Seal | | С | C | С | Drv cloth |
| Transfer Entrance | - | | | | Dry cloth |
| Guide | C | C | C | C | 2., |
| Used Toner Tank | I | С | С | С | Empty the tank. |

| B079/B082 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|--|---------|------|------|------|---|
| FUSING UNIT AND PAPE | ER EXIT | | | | |
| Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates | | С | С | С | Water or alcohol. |
| Hot Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Pressure Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Fusing Thermistors | | R | R | R | |
| Cleaning Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Cleaning Roller Bushings | | L | L | L | Grease: Barrierta JFE 55/2 |
| Hot Roller Strippers | | С | R | С | Water or alcohol. |
| Paper Exit Guide Ribs | | С | С | С | Water or alcohol. (See illustration below.) |
| Exit Sensor | | С | С | С | Blower brush |
| DRIVE | | | | | |
| Drive Belts | | | I | | Replace if necessary |

Preventive //aintenance

Clean here.



| B541 | EM | 80K | 160K | 240K | NOTE | |
|----------------------|----|-----|------|------|-------------------|--|
| ARDF (for originals) | | | | | | |
| Pick-up Roller | С | R | R | R | Belt cleaner | |
| Feed Belt | С | R | R | R | Belt cleaner | |
| Separation Roller | С | R | R | R | Dry or damp cloth | |
| Sensors | | С | С | С | Blower brush | |
| Drive Gears | | L | L | L | Grease, G501 | |

| B542 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|--------------------|----|------|------|------|--|
| PAPER TRAY UNIT | | | | | |
| Paper Feed Rollers | | R | R | R | Check counter with SP7-204. If |
| Pick-up Rollers | | R | R | R | \geq 150 K, replace roller. After |
| Separation Rollers | | R | R | R | replacing the roller, do SP7-816 to reset counter. |
| Relay Rollers | | С | С | С | Dry or damp cloth |
| Bottom Plate Pad | | С | С | С | Dry or damp cloth |

PM TABLE

| B543 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|-------------------|----|------|------|------|---|
| LCT | | | | | |
| Paper Feed Roller | | R | R | R | Check counter with SP7-204. If ≥ 150 K, replace roller. After replacing the roller, do SP7-816 to reset counter. |
| Pick-up Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Separation Roller | | R | R | R | |
| Bottom Plate Pad | | С | С | С | Dry or damp cloth |

| B408/B545 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE | | | | |
|------------------------------|----|------|------|------|----------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1000-SHEET/TWO-TRAY FINISHER | | | | | | | | | |
| Rollers | С | | | | Water or alcohol. | | | | |
| Brush Roller (A681 only) | I | I | I | I | Replace if required. | | | | |
| Discharge Brush | С | С | С | С | Dry cloth | | | | |
| Sensors | С | | | | Blower brush | | | | |
| Jogger Fences | | | I | I | Replace if required. | | | | |
| Punch Waste Hopper* | | I | I | I | Empty hopper. | | | | |
| * Only for B545 | | | | | | | | | |

Only for B545

| B546 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|-------------------------|----|------|------|------|------|
| BOOKLET FINISHER | | | | | |
| Transport Belt | | С | С | С | |
| Stapler Paddles | | С | С | С | |

| B544 | EM | 150K | 300K | 450K | NOTE |
|-----------------|----|------|------|------|-------------------|
| 1-BIN TRAY UNIT | | | | | |
| Rollers | С | | | | Dry or damp cloth |
| Copy Tray | С | | | | Dry or damp cloth |
| Sensors | С | | | | Blower brush |

^{*1} Lubricate the paper feed clutch gear [A] with Silicone Grease G501 every P.M.



3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

New design changes have been implemented in order to accommodate the new PxP (Polyester Polymerization) toner, which is of smaller particle size and allows lower fusing temperatures. This section describes some of these design changes and how they affect replacement and adjustment procedures.

PCU

- **Charge roller replacement:** The standard voltages for SP2001 1 have changed and must be checked after charge roller replacement.

Fusing Unit

The fusing unit can be operated at a lower temperature for the finer toner because it melts easily, so the following changes have been made in the fusing unit:

- Hot roller knob: The size of the knob on the end of the fusing unit is larger, making the roller easier to turn manually. (3.4.1)

Other Changes

While the following are not related to the new toner, they are nonetheless important changes:

- Toner shield glass cover: The shield glass is now equipped with a cover that locks the glass in place and prevents the shield glass from sliding out of the machine accidentally. (
 3.2.2)
- **Dust blades:** Two new paper dust blades have been added around the registration roller to clean paper dust from the paper feed path. Both blades can be easily removed and cleaned. (3.5.1, 3.5.2)
- **IOB:** The IOB (I/O Interface Board) has been moved from inside the machine to under the rear lower cover, making access much easier. (- 3.6.1)
- Flash memory cards: The number designations for the flash memory cards have changed. (-3.1.1)

3.1 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

3.1.1 SPECIAL TOOLS

| Part Number | Description | Q'ty |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|------|
| A2309003 | Adjustment Cam – Laser Unit | 1 |
| A2309004 | Positioning Pin – Laser Unit | 1 |
| N8036701 | Flash Memory Card – 4MB | 1 |
| N8031000 | Case – Flash Memory Card | 1 |
| A0069104 | Scanner Positioning Pin (4 pcs/set) | 1 |
| A2929500 | Test Chart – S5S (10 pcs/Set) | 1 |
| G0219350 | Parallel Loopback Connector | 1 |

3.1.2 LUBRICANTS

| Part Number | Description | Q'ty |
|-------------|------------------------|------|
| A2579300 | Grease Barrierta S552R | 1 |
| 52039502 | Silicone Grease G-501 | 1 |

3.2 LASER UNIT

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

3.2.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS

Two caution decals are located in the laser section as shown below. (See the next page for removal instructions.)



LASER-2.WMF

3.2.2 LASER UNIT



Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting this procedure. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

- 1. Open the front door and raise the toner bottle holder handle [A].
- 2. Front door (pins [B] x 2)
- 3. Inner cover [C] (ℰ x 2, ⊑ x 1)
- 4. Shield glass cover [D].

The shield glass cover holds the shield glass firmly in place and prevents it from accidental removal.

To remove, on the left side press in the top leaf and pull off.

When re-attaching the shield glass cover, note that the top leaf lies on top of the plastic form.

5. Shield glass [E]



- 6. Shield plate [A] (x 2)
- 7. Laser unit connectors [B] (I × 6, I × 1 flat cable)
 NOTE: Hold the LD board securely when disconnecting connectors.
- Laser unit [C] (x 2)
 NOTE: When sliding out the laser unit, do not hold the LD board. Hold the laser unit casing.

3.3 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

3.3.1 PCU



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Lower the by-pass tray, open the duplex unit, and open the transfer unit right cover.
- Spread a sheet of A4 or LTR size paper [A] on top of the open front door.
 NOTE: This paper catches any loose toner that may fall from the PCU as it is removed.
- 4. Loosen [B] (🕅 x 1).
- 5. Rotate bracket [C] to the left.
- 6. Raise the release lever [D].
- Hold the PCU [E] as shown and pull it out of the machine.
 NOTE: If the right cover is to be left open, cover the drum with paper, or remove the PCU and cover it with paper. Before you re-install the PCU, align the brackets on the PCU with the rails above and make sure they are engaged before you slowly push the PCU into the machine.

3.3.2 DRUM



- 1. Remove the PCU ((-3.3.1)
- 2. Toner cap [A]
- Insert cap [A] into the toner entrance hole [B].
 NOTE: Make sure that the cap is inserted completely into the hole.
- 4. On the left side of the PCU, disconnect the spring [C].
- 5. On the right side of the PCU disconnect the spring [D] and attach it to hooks as shown.
 - To prevent breaking the weaker hook ①, use a pair of needle-nose pliers to disconnect the spring at ②, then re-attach to ② and ③.
 - Moving this spring retracts the movable drum cleaning blade so it does not touch the surface of the drum when the drum is re-installed.





- 6. Turn the PCU upside-down, and remove lower PCU cover [A] (²/₇ x 2, 3 pawls).
- 7. Pull the drum [B] towards the front ② (the left side in the illustration) while releasing the charge roller [C] using the release lever ① [D], and then remove the drum ③.

CAUTION: Never touch the drum surface with bare hands.

- 8. Replace the drum and re-attach the lower PCU cover.
- Detach the spring from ②, ③and re-attach to ①,
 ②.

CAUTION: You must return re-attach the spring to ①, ② in order for the cleaning blade to operate correctly.

If you fail to re-attach the spring to ①, ② the movable cleaning blade will not contact the drum for cleaning, but the machine will operate without generating an error. However, copies will gradually become dirty due to toner collecting on the drum.



- 10. Re-attach the spring on the left side of the PCU.
- 11. After replacing the drum, perform the ID sensor initial setting using SP3001 002.
- 12. Do the process initial setting procedure (SP2805).

3.3.3 PICK-OFF PAWLS



- 1. Remove the drum. (\$3.3.2)
- 2. Pawl assembly [A]
- 3. Pick-off pawl [B] (spring x 1, spur x 1)

Pick-off pawl position adjustment

If the pick-off pawl has marked the drum with a line, the pick-off pawl position can be adjusted using either method:

- Changing the spur position.
- · Changing the pick-off pawl assembly position

CAUTION: After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (3.3.2)

3.3.4 CHARGE ROLLER AND CLEANING ROLLER



- 1. Remove the drum. (3.3.2)
- 2. Two snap rings [A] (🖾 x 2).
- 3. Push charge roller holder [B] toward the front of the PCU and remove the spring [C].
- Charge roller [D].
 NOTE: Disengage the charge roller on the right side to remove. Try to avoid touching the charge roller.
- Cleaning roller [E].
 NOTE: Disengage the cleaning roller on the left to remove.
- After replacing the charge roller and cleaning roller, check the value of SP2001 001. If it is not at the standard value (1450 V), set SP2001 001 to -1450 V.
 NOTE: If this is not done, the carrier will be attracted to the drum because the charge roller voltage will be too high.
- **CAUTION:** After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (3.3.2)

3.3.5 DRUM CLEANING BLADE 2



- 1. Remove the OPC drum. (-3.3.2)
- 2. Remove the charge roller and cleaning roller. (
 3.3.4)
- 3. Remove the movable cleaning blade [A]. (\bigcirc x 1)

Re-installation

- Engage the left end of the cleaning blade first, then make sure that both arms [B] and [C] are through the holes on the left and right side.
- When you re-attach the snap-ring, make sure that the head of the snap ring [D] is below the blade.

CAUTION: After re-assembly make sure that the front spring of the movable cleaning blade is re-attached to the ①, ② position. (3.3.2)

3.3.6 DRUM CLEANING BLADE 1



- 1. Remove the drum. ($rac{}3.3.2$)
- 2. Remove the charge roller and cleaning roller. ($rac{-}3.3.4$)
- 4. Remove the stationary drum cleaning blade [A] ($\hat{P} \times 2$)

3.4 FUSING UNIT

Allow time for the unit to cool before doing the following procedure.

3.4.1 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL



- 1. Open the front door, duplex unit, and right door.
- 2. Set screw [A] (🖗 x 1)
- 3. Fusing unit release lever [B]
- 4. Slide out the fusing unit [C]
- **NOTE:** A larger knob [D] is provided to make turning the hot roller easier to free jams.

3.4.2 FUSING UNIT SIDE FAN



B079R713.WMF

- 1. Open the duplex unit and right door.
- 2. Release the transfer unit [A] and remove it.
- 3. Remove the shaft cover [B] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 3$).



- Separate the fan connectors [A] (I x 1).
 NOTE: When re-connecting, be sure the thread the connector correctly between the gaps.
- 5. Close the right door.
- 6. Use a short screwdriver to remove the fan plate [B] ($\hat{\not}$ x 2).
- 7. Pull the fan [C] out of the machine.

3.4.3 FUSING UNIT CORNER FAN



B079R716.WMF



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Open the duplex unit and right door.
- 3. Remove the fusing unit. (\bullet 3.4.1)
- 4. Remove the magnet lock [A] of the front door ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$).
- 5. Remove the fan bracket [B] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$).
- 6. Remove the fan [C] from the bracket ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 2$).

3.5 PAPER FEED

3.5.1 IDLE ROLLER DUST BLADE



- 1. Open the duplex unit and right door.
- 2. Detach the dust blade [A].
- 3. Spread some paper on a flat surface and tap the dust blade gently to remove paper dust collected in its dust box.

3.5.2 REGISTRATION ROLLER DUST BLADE



- 1. Open the duplex unit and open the right door.
- 2. Remove the PCU. (0)
- 3. Remove the development unit [A].
- 4. Press the top of the blade [B] to unlock it and open it to the left.
- 5. Remove the dust blade [C] from the machine.

3.6 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS

3.6.1 IOB







- 1. Remove the rear lower cover [A] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 4$).
- 2. Remove the IOB [B] (I All, $\hat{P} \ge 4$, Ribbon cable ≥ 1).
- 3. The IOB is identical for the B079/B082. However, the DIP switches are set differently for each machine. Check the DIP switches then adjust settings as required. (See next page.)

IOB DIP Switch Settings (SW101)

- The position of SW 1 determines the engine speed. This switch should be UP (ON) for the B079 (35 cpm) or DOWN (OFF) for the B082 (45 cpm) NOTE: Move a switch UP to ON or DOWN to OFF.
- 2. SW 2, 3, 4, and 5 should all be DOWN (OFF). Do not change these settings. This information is only for reference:

| SW | If set to ON |
|----|--|
| 2 | Switches off jam detection. |
| 3 | Engine program recovery. |
| 4 | Print output for debugging. |
| 5 | Checking duplex function at the factory. |

3. SW 6, 7, 8 should be set for the area where the machine is used and serviced.

| 6 | 7 | 8 | Location |
|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| OFF | OFF | OFF | Japan |
| ON | OFF | OFF | North America |
| OFF | ON | OFF | Europe |
| OFF | OFF | ON | China |
| ON | OFF | ON | Taiwan |
| ON | ON | OFF | Asia |
| OFF | ON | ON | Korea |
| ON | ON | ON | Not used |

ON: Up OFF: Down

3.7 HARD DISK, CONTROLLER BOARD

NOTE: The controller boards are machine specific, i.e. the controller board for the B079 (35 cpm) must be installed in the B079 copier, and the controller board for the B082 (45 cpm) must be installed in the B082 copier. These controller boards are not interchangeable.



Replacemen Adjustment

[B]

B079R914.WMF

- 1. Controller board [A] (\Im x 2) **NOTE:** Use the wire handle to slide the HDD out of the expansion box.
 - 2. HDD unit bracket [B] (²/₂ x 3, ²/₂ x 2)
 - HDD unit [C] (x 4)
 NOTE: Work carefully to avoid dropping or hitting the HDD.

After replacing the HDD, execute SP 5853 to copy the stamp data from the firmware ROM to the new disk. No flash card is needed.

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED ([★]^①) lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

4.1.1 SUMMARY

There are 4 levels of service call conditions.

| Level | Definition | Reset Procedure |
|-------|--|--|
| A | To prevent damage to the machine, the main machine cannot be operated until the SC has been reset by a service representative (see the note below). | Enter SP mode, and then turn the main power switch off and on. |
| В | If the SC was caused by incorrect sensor detection, the SC can be reset by turning the main power switch off and on. | Turn the operation switch and main power switch off and on. |
| С | The main machine can be operated as usual, excluding the unit related to the service call. | Turn the operation switch off and on. |
| D | The SC history is updated. The machine can be operated as usual. | The SC will not be displayed. Only the SC history is updated. |

- **NOTE:** 1) If the problem concerns electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before replacing the PCBs.
 - 2) If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before replacing motors or sensors.

Troubleshooting

4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

NOTE: This is a list of the new and revised SC codes for the B079 (35 cpm) and B082 (45 cpm) machines. For details about other SC codes please refer to Service Manual of the previous models.

| Code No. | | Symptom | Possible Cause | |
|---------------------|---|--|--|--|
| 320 | С | Polygon motor error | | |
| (Deleted) | | | | |
| 335 (New) | С | Polygonal Mirror Motor Error 1: ON Timeout The XSCRDY signal is not issued (LOW: Active) within 25 s after the polygonal mirror motor switches on. | I/F harness of the polygonal mirror motor disconnected or defective. Polygonal mirror motor or polygonal mirror motor driver defective. Polygonal mirror motor drive pulse is not output incorrectly. GABIC cannot monitor XSCRDY signal. | |
| 336 (New) | С | Polygonal Mirror Motor Error 2: OFF Timeout The XSCRDY signal is not issued (HIGH: Inactive) within 2 s after the polygonal mirror motor switches off. | I/F harness of the polygonal mirror motor disconnected or defective. Polygonal mirror motor or polygonal mirror motor driver defective. Polygonal mirror motor drive pulse is not output incorrectly. GABIC cannot monitor XSCRDY signal. | |
| 337 (New) | С | Polygonal Mirror Motor Error 3: XSCRDY Signal Error The XSCRDY is not issued (HIGH: Inactive) after the polygonal mirror motor has been rotating normally for 600 ms. | I/F harness of the polygonal mirror motor disconnected or defective. Polygonal mirror motor or polygonal mirror motor driver defective. Polygonal mirror motor drive pulse is not output incorrectly. GABIC cannot monitor XSCRDY signal. | |
| 338 (New) | С | Polygonal Mirror Motor Error 4: Unstable Timeout The XSCRDY signal is detected LOW) (Active) after the polygonal mirror motor switches on, but the signal is not detected LOW after 1 s has elapsed, and not detected after another 500 ms has elapsed. | I/F harness of the polygonal mirror motor disconnected or defective. Polygonal mirror motor or polygonal mirror motor driver defective. Polygonal mirror motor drive pulse is not output incorrectly. GABIC cannot monitor XSCRDY signal. | |
| 450 (New) | С | Feed Development Motor Error The PLL lock signal remains LOW for 2 s while the feed development motor is operating. | Motor lock caused by overload.Motor driver defective. | |
| 520 | С | Fusing/Feed-Out Motor Error | | |
| (New) | | The PLL lock signal remains LOW for 2 s while the feed development motor is operating. | Motor lock caused by overload.Motor driver defective. | |





Ξ

| Code No |). | Symptom | Possible Cause | |
|------------------|----|--|--|--|
| 818 (New) | В | Watch Dog Error While the system program is running, a bus hold or interrupt program goes into an eternal loop, preventing any other programs from executing | System program defective Controller board defective Peripheral device malfunction | |
| 838 (Deleted) | В | Self-diagnostic Error: Clock Generator | | |
| 840 (New) | C | Self-Diagnostic Error 1: EEPROM Access Error During input/output with the EEPROM, one of the following errors occurred: A read error occurred, then continued after 3 retries. Write error occurred. | EEPROM defective EEPROM worn out | |
| 841 (New) | C | Self-Diagnostic Error 2: EEPROM Read/Write Data Error The values of the data written and "mirrored" in 3 errors are all detected as not matching | The data is being written into the 3 designated errors differently | |
| 853 (New) | В | Wireless LAN Error: Card Error 1 The wireless LAN board can be accessed, but the wireless LAN card (IEEE 802.11b or Bluetooth) cannot access the board. | Wireless LAN card not inserted into the wireless LAN board | |
| 854 (New) | В | Wireless LAN Error Card Error 2 • Wireless LAN card has been removed The board that holds the wireless LAN card can be accessed, but the wireless LAN card (802.11b/Bluetooth) itself cannot be accessed while the machine is operating • Wireless LAN card has been removed | | |
| 855 (New) | В | Wireless LAN Error 3: Card Error 3 An error is detected for the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth). | Wireless LAN card defectiveWireless card connection not tight | |
| 856 (New) | | Wireless LAN Error 4: Board An error is detected for the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth). | Wireless LAN card board defectivePCI connector loose | |
| 857 (New) | В | USB I/F Error The USB driver is unstable and generated an error. The USB I/F cannot be used. | • The USB driver can generate three types of errors: RX, CRC, and STALL errors. Only the STALL error can generate this SC code. | |
| 870 (New) | В | Address Book Data Error Address book data stored on the hard disk was detected as abnormal when it was accessed from either the operation panel or the network. | Software defectiveHDD defective | |

Troubleshooting

4-3

| Code No |). | Symptom | Possible Cause |
|-----------|----|--|--|
| 871 | В | FCU Flash ROM Error | Flash ROM device defective |
| (New) | | The address book written into the flash ROM mounted on the FCU is detected as defective. | Replace flash ROM on the MBU |
| 880 | В | MLB Error | MLB defective |
| (New) | | A request for access to the MLB (Media Link Board) was not answered within the specified time. | |
| 920 | В | Printer Error 1 | |
| (New) | | An internal application error was detected and operation cannot continue. | Software defectiveInsufficient memory |
| 925 | В | Network File Error | NIA |
| (New) | | NIA | |
| 964 | С | Scanner Start Error | Software defective |
| (Revised) | | During scanned image processing, another command to start scanning was received. | |
| 992 | Α | Unexpected Software Error | Software defective |
| (New) | | Software encountered an unexpected operation not defined under any SC code. | An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred |
| 995 | Α | Machine Type Information Error | The B079 (35 cpm) and B082 (45 cpm) |
| (New) | | After the machine is powered on, a mismatch is detected between the CPM information sent from the controller to the engine and the CPM information specified by the DIP SW settings. | use the same controller board, but the DIP SW settings must be set correctly for the machine speed. For details, see Section "3. Replace and Adjustment". |





4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

4.2.1 SENSORS

| Component (Symbol) | CN | Condition | Symptom |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|---|
| Scanner Home | 504 5(SIB) | Open | SC121 is displayed. |
| Position (S1) | | Shorted | SC120 is displayed. |
| Platen Cover | 504-8 (SIB) | Open | APS and ARE do not function properly. |
| (S2) | 30 4 -0 (315) | Shorted | No symptom. |
| Original Width | 505-3, 4 | Open | CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly. |
| (55) | (316) | Shorted | |
| Original Length-1 (S4) | 505-8,9 (SIB) | Open | CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly. |
| (01) | (0.2) | Shorted | |
| Original Length-2 | 505-13 (SIB) | Open | CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly. |
| (00) | (012) | Shorted | |
| LD Unit Home | 204-B2 | Open | SC328 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed. |
| Position (S6) | (IOB) | Shorted | SC327 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed. |
| Toner Density | 222-5 | Open | The add toner indicator blinks even if there is toner in the development unit. |
| (TD) (S7) | (IOB) | Shorted | SC390-01 is displayed. |
| Dopor Evit (S9) | 202-B2 (IOB) | Open | The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made. |
| | | Shorted | The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper. |
| Degistration (SQ) | 224-B2 (IOB) | Open | The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper. |
| Registration (39) | | Shorted | The The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made. |
| Image Density | 203-5 | Open | SC350-03 is displayed after copying. |
| (ID) (S10) | (IOB) | Shorted | SC350-01 is displayed after copying. |
| Upper Paper | 220-2 | Open | Add Paper is displayed even if there is paper. If this condition occurred four times, SC501-02 will be displayed. |
| Height (S11) | (IOB) | Shorted | SC501-01 is displayed. |
| Lower Paper Height (S12) | 214-2 (IOB) | Open | Add Paper is displayed even if there is paper. If this condition occurred four times, SC502-02 will be displayed. |
| | | Shorted | SC502-01 is displayed. |
| | | Open | The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed in the upper paper tray. |
| Upper Paper End (S13) | 220-8 (IOB) | Shorted | The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper in the upper paper tray. |

BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

| Component (Symbol) | CN | Condition | Symptom |
|-----------------------|---------|-----------|---|
| Lower Paper End | 214-8 | Open | The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed in the lower paper tray. |
| (S14) | (IOB) | Shorted | The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper in the lower paper tray. |
| Upper Relay | 220-5 | Open | The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made. |
| (S15) | (IOB) | Shorted | The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper. |
| Lower Relay | 214-5 | Open | The Paper Jam indicator will light whenever a copy is made. |
| (S16) | (IOB) | Shorted | The Paper Jam indicator lights even if there is no paper. |
| Transfer Belt | 202-A10 | Open | No symptom |
| Position (S19) | (IOB) | Shorted | SC403 is displayed |

4.2.2 SWITCHES

| Component (Symbol) | CN | Condition | Symptom |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------|--|
| Right Lower | 216-4 | Open | "Doors/Covers Open" is displayed even if the right lower cover is closed. |
| Cover (SW1) | (IOB) | Shorted | The LCD goes blank when the lower cover is opened. |
| | 102-1~4 (PSU) 107-1 | Open | The machine does not turn on. |
| Main (SW3) | | Shorted | The machine does not turn off. |
| Front Cover | 107-1 | Open | "Doors/Covers Open" is displayed even if the front cover is closed. |
| Safety (SW4) | (PSU) | Shorted | "Doors/Covers" Open is not displayed even if the front cover is opened. |

4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

| Fuse | Rating | | Symptom at power on |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|--|
| | 115V | 210 ~ 230V | |
| Power Sup | oply Board | | |
| FU1 | 6.3A / 125V | 6.3A / 250V | "Doors/Covers Open" is displayed |
| FU2 | 6.3A / 125V | 6.3A / 250V | "Doors/Covers Open" for the finisher is displayed |
| FU3 | 6.3A / 125V | 6.3A / 250V | Paper end condition |
| FU5 | 6.3A / 125V | 6.3A / 250V | SC302, or SC403, or SC405 displayed |
| FU6 | 3.15A/125V | 3.15A/250V | |
| FU9 | 4A/125V | 4A/250V | |
| FU101 | 15A / 125V | | No response |
| FU102 | 10A / 125V | 5A / 250V | No response |
| FU103 | 2A / 125V | 1A / 250V | Normal operation (optional heaters do not work) |

4.4 LEDS

BICU LED Sequences

| | LED 101 (Green) | LED 102 (Red) | LED 103 (Orange) |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Normal Operation | Flashes | Off | Flashes |
| System Startup | Flashes | On (1~2s) then Off | Flashes |
| Firmware Update: Normal Execution | Flashes | On | Flashes |
| Firmware Update: Error | Flashes | Flashes | Flashes |
| Firmware Update: Normal End | Flashes | Off | Flashes |
| Energy Save Mode | Off | Off | Off |

Controller LED Sequences

| | LED 1 (Red) | LED 2 (Red) |
|---|----------------|----------------|
| System Startup (including Self-Diagnostics) | On | Off |
| Self-Diagnostic Error | On | On |
| Normal Operation | Flashes | Off |
| Firmware Update: Normal Execution | Flashes | Flashes |
| Firmware Update: Error | Off | Off |
| Firmware Update: Normal End | On | On |

Troubleshooting

NOTE: LED 1 monitors Data Bus Bit 14, LED 2 monitors Data Bus Bit 15.

4.5 TEST POINTS

Controller Board

| Number | Monitored Signal |
|--------|------------------|
| TP1 | GND |
| TP3 | GND |
| TP6 | GND |
| TP8 | DB0 RXD |
| TP9 | DB0 TXD |
| TP10 | GND |
| TP11 | +5VE |
| TP12 | GND |
| TP13 | +5V |
| TP14 | +5VE |
| TP15 | GND |
| TP16 | R_FGATE |
| TP17 | W_FGATE |

5. SERVICE TABLES

Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

NOTE: The main power LED lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES

Due to fundamental changes in image processing Group 4 and controller related additions in Group 5, all the SP codes for the B079 (35 cpm) and B082 (45 cpm) are included in the tables below.

5.1.1 SERVICE TABLE KEY

| Notation | What it means |
|-----------------------------|---|
| [range / default / step] | Example: [-9 ~ +9 / +3.0 / 0.1 mm step]. The setting can be |
| | adjusted in the range \pm 9, value reset to +3.0 after an NVRAM |
| | reset, and the value can be changed in 0.1 mm steps with each |
| | key press. |
| italics | Comments added for reference. |
| * | Value stored in NVRAM. After a RAM reset, this default value |
| | (factory setting) is restored. |
| 1111 | An SP number set in bold-italic denotes a "Special Service |
| | Program" mode setting that appears only after entering the SP |
| | mode by pressing (#) on the 10-key pad and "Copy SP" on the |
| | touch-screen together. |
| B079 | Denotes the 35 cpm model. |
| B082 | Denotes the 45 cpm model. |
| DFU | Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value. |
| Japan only | The feature or item is for Japan only. Do not change this value. |
| LEF | Long Edge Feed |
| SEF | Short Edge Feed |
| (6.2 Image Processing) | Refer to "6.2 Image Processing" in "6. Details". |
| | Due to fundamental changes in how image processing |
| | adjustment is done with Group 4 SP codes, more details are |
| | provided in Section 6. |

service Tables

5.1.2 SERVICE TABLES

SP1-xxx: Feed

| SP1 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------|-----------------------------|---|
| 1001* | Lea | ding Edge Registration | Adjusts the printing leading edge registration using |
| | | | the trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No.11). |
| | | | [+9 ~ _9 / 3.0 / 0.1 mm] |
| | | | Use $($ $)$ to toggle between \pm before entering the |
| | | | value. |
| 1000+ | <u></u> | | Specification: 3 ±2 mm |
| 1002* | Side | e-to-Side Registration | Adjusts the printing side-to-side registration from |
| | | | ne siù paper leeu station using the trimming area |
| | | | 1 be the (372-302-3, NO, 17). |
| | | | entering the value. |
| | | | Specification: 2 ± 1.5 mm |
| | 1 | Trav1 | [–9 ~ +9/ +3.0 mm / 0.1 mm step] |
| | 2 | Trav2 | |
| | 3 | Trav3 | [-9~ +9/ +2.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step] |
| | 4 | Trav4 | Tray3, Tray4 for Paper Feed Unit. |
| | 5 | Duplex Tray | [-9 ~ +9/ +0.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step] |
| | 6 | By-pass Tray | [-9 ~ +9/ +3.0 mm / 0.1 mm/step] |
| | 7 | LCT (if present) | [-9 ~ +9/ +1.5 mm / 0.1 mm/step] |
| 1003* | Reg | istration Buckle Adjustment | |
| | 1 | Paper Feed Trays/LCT | Adjusts the relay clutch timing at registration. Relay |
| | 2 | Duplex Tray | clutch timing determines the amount of paper |
| | 3 | By-pass Tray | buckle at registration. (A "+" setting causes more |
| | 4 | Tray1 Feed | buckling.) |
| | _ | | [-9 ~+9/ 0 /1 mm step] |
| 1007 | By-p | bass Feed Paper Size | Displays the paper width sensor data for the by- |
| 1010* | Disp | Nay | Adjusts the timing of the colongide at the entroped |
| 1012 | Timi | | and exit of the paper exit section to accommodate |
| | | | the increased speed of the duplex unit |
| | | | This SP has been added to compensate for the |
| | | | increased operation speed of the duplex unit for this |
| | | | machine. Increase the value if the leading edges |
| | | | are jamming. Decrease the value if trailing edges |
| | | | are bending at the entrance. |
| | 1* | Exit Entrance Junction | B079: |
| | 0 * | | [200~450 ms / 370 ms / 10 ms] |
| | 2 | Solenoid | 1200 ~ 450 ms / 300 ms (ent.) 370 ms (evit) /10 ms] |
| 1103* | Fusi | na Idlina | Switches fusing idling on/off When on printing will |
| 1100 | 1 45 | | not start until enough time has elapsed so the hot |
| | | | roller can reach optimum temperature. This ensures |
| | | | even heat on the hot roller. |
| | | | Switch on if fusing on the 1st and 2nd copies is |
| | | | incomplete (this may occur if the room is cold.) |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| 1 | | | |

| SP1 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-----------------|--|--|
| 1103* | 1* | Enable Fusing Idling | 0 = Off , 1 = On |
| | | | In a cold environment, switch on and then set the idling time with SP1-103-2 to ensure the quality of the first copies. |
| | 2* | Fusing Idling Interval | [0 ~ 60 sec. / 30 sec. / 1 sec.] |
| | | | You must switch SP1-103-1 on before you can set the fusing idling interval. |
| 1104* | | Fusing Temperature | Selects the fusing temperature control mode. |
| 4405 | | Control | [0 = On/Off / 1 phase |
| 1105 | Fusi | ng Temperature Adjustment | Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center and both ends of the hot roller for paper fed from a tray. Use SP1105 001, SP1105 002 to adjust for any tray other than the by-pass tray. Use SP1105 003, SP1105 004 to adjust for by-pass tray. Allows adjustment of the hot roller temperature at the center and ends of the roller for the quality or thickness of the paper. The hot roller in this machine has two fusing lamps: one heats the center of the roller, the other heats both ends. Each fusing lamp can be adjusted separately. |
| | 1 | Center | 35 cpm : [120 ~ 200/ 150 / 1 deq.] |
| | | | 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.] |
| | 2 | Ends | 35 cpm : [120 ~ 200 / 160 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 200 / 175 / 1 deg.] |
| | 3 | Center – Bypass | 35 cpm : [120 ~ 200 / 160 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.] |
| | 4 | End – Bypass | 35 cpm : [120 ~ 200 / 160 / 1 deg.] 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.] |
| | 5 | Re-load Temp. Minus: | Adjusts the temperature for re-heating the hot roller. |
| | | Roller Center | Re-load Temp. = Fusing. Temp – SP Value |
| | 6 | Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends | [0 ~ 60 / 30 / 1 step] Note: The "re-load temperature" is the "print ready temperature. When the fusing temperature exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Spec. Temp – SP Value) that is higher than the SP1105 002 setting. |
| | 7 | Center – Thick Paper | 35 cpm : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.]] 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.]] |
| | 8 | Ends – Thick Paper | 35 cpm : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.]] 45 cpm: : [120 ~ 200 / 170 / 1 deg.]] |
| | 9* | Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center (Thick Paper) | Forces paper feed to wait until the fusing unit has reached the specified temperature. Feed temp. = Spec. temp. for thick paper – SP value |
| | 10* | Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends (Thick Paper) | Feed begins when the hot roller reaches the specified temperature. B079: [0 ~ 60 / 0°C / 5] B082: [0~ 60 / 0°C /1] |
| 1106 | Fusi | ng Temperature Display | Displays the fusing temperature for the center or |
| | 1 Roller Center | | ends of the hot roller. This machine has two fusing lamps inside the hot roller: one lamp heats the center of the roller, the other lamp heats both ends. |

Service Tables

| ir | | | | | | |
|-------|------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| SP1 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | | | |
| 1106 | 2 | Roller Ends | | | | |
| | 3 | I/O Board Temp. at Power On | Displays in degrees centigrade the internal temperature of the machine when it was powered on. | | | |
| 1109* | Fusing Nip Band Check | | Checks the fusing nip band. [0 =Off, 1=On] | | | |
| 1111* | | Paper Reverse Timing (Duplex) | Adjusts the timing for stopping the rotation of the reverse roller after the trailing edge of the paper passes the duplex entrance sensor. $[+5 \sim -5 / 0 \text{ mm} / 1 \text{ mm step}]$ Adjust the timing if paper frequently jams at the inverter gate in the duplex unit. | | | |
| 1801 | Motor Speed Adjustment | | Adjusts the speeds of the main motor, feed/development motor, and fusing exit motor. | | | |
| | 1 | Main Motor | [-4 ~ +4 / 0 / 0.15%] | | | |
| | 2 | Feed/Development Motor | Each step decreases or increases motor speed in | | | |
| | 3 | Fusing/Exit Motor | 0.15% increments | | | |

SP2-xxx: Drum

| | SP2 | Γ | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] | | |
|---|-------|--|----------------------------|--|--|--|
| | 2001* | Charge Roller Bias Adjustment | | | | |
| | | 1* | Copying | Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate for | | |
| | | | | copying. | | |
| | | 2* | ID Sensor Pattern | Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller | | |
| | | - | | when making the VSDP ID sensor pattern (for | | |
| | | | | charge roller voltage correction). The actual charge | | |
| | | | | roller voltage is this value plus the value of SP2- | | |
| | | | | [0 ~ 700 / 200V / 10V step] | | |
| | 2005* | Charge Roller Bias Correction Adjustment | | | | |
| | | 1* | Charge Roller Voltage | Adjusts the lower threshold value for the charge | | |
| | | | Correction 1 | roller correction. | | |
| | | | | value, the charge roller voltage increases by 30 V | | |
| | | | | (e.g., from –500 to –530). | | |
| | | 0* | Ohanna Dallar Valtana | [0.1 ~ 1.0 / 0.85 / 0.05 step] | | |
| | | 2 | Correction 2 | Adjusts the upper threshold value for the charge roller correction | | |
| = | | | | When the value of VSP/VSG is greater than this | | |
| | | | | value, the charge roller voltage decreases by 30 V | | |
| | | | | (absolute value). [0 1 ~ 1 0 / 0 90 / 0 05 step] | | |
| | | 3* | Charge Roller Voltage | Adjusts the lower limit value for charge roller | | |
| | | _ | Adjustment 1 | voltage correction. | | |
| | | | | [-1000 ~ -2000 / 1450V / 10V step] | | |
| | | 4* | Charge Roller Voltage | Adjusts the upper limit value for charge roller | | |
| | | | Aujustment 2 | [-1000 ~ -2000 / 2000V / 10V step] | | |
| | | 5 * | Charge Roller Voltage Step | Adjusts the correction voltage adjustment step size. | | |
| | 0404* | <u> </u> | | [0 ~ 100V / 30V / 10V step] | | |
| | 2101* | Prin | iting Erase Margin | Adjusts the leading edge (top), trailing edge (bottom) left, and right margins | | |
| | | 1* | Leading Edge (Top) | $[0.9 \sim 9.0 / 3 / 0.1 \text{ mm step}]$ | | |
| | | 2* | Trailing Edge (Bottom) | Specification: ±2 mm | | |
| | | 3* | Left Edge | [0.9 ~ 9.0 / 2 / 0.1 mm step] | | |
| | | 4* | Right Edge | Specification: ±1.5 mm | | |
| | | 5* | Trailing Edge - Back side | Adjusts the trailing edge erase margin on the | | |
| | | | | reverse side of duplex copies. | | |
| | | | | $[0.0^{\circ} 4.07 1.27 0.1 \text{ mm step}]$ | | |
| | | 6* | Back Side - Right | Adjusts the right side erase margin in the reverse | | |
| | | | J J | side of duplex copies. | | |
| | | | | [0.0 ~ 9.0 / 0.3 / 0.1 mm step] | | |
| | | 7+ | | Recommend: 2 ±1.5 mm | | |
| | | 7 | Back Side - Left | Adjusts the left side erase margin in the reverse side of duplex copies | | |
| | | | | [0.0 ~ 9.0 / 0.3 / 0.1 mm step] | | |
| | | | | Recommended: 2 +2.5/-1.5 mm | | |

Service Tables
| SP2 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|--|-----------------------------------|---|
| 2103* | LD | Power Adjustment | Adjusts the intensity of the laser for the copier, printer, and fax unit. The Copier and Printer/Fax settings can be adjusted separately. DFU |
| | 1* | LD1 (Copier) | $(55 \approx \pm 64 / -20 / 1 + SP \text{ stop})$ |
| | 1 2* | | (-55% + 647 - 2071 + 1555 + 5169) |
| | 2* | LD2 (Copier) | $(-50 \sim -35 / -5 / 1 + SB step)$ |
| | | LD1 (Frinter, FAX) | |
| | + 5* | LD2 (Finder, FAX) | |
| | 6* | LD2 Adjustment Start/End | |
| 2109* | 6* LD2 Adjustment Start/End 2109* LD Beam Pitch Adjustment | | Adjusts the beam gap for the dual beam system. After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing the NVRAM, use this SP mode to adjust the laser beam pitch. This adjustment is performed by specifying the number of pulses to the stepper motor that will adjust the angle of rotation of the LD unit from the home position. |
| | 1* | 400 dpi | Adjusts the laser beam pitch value for 400 dpi resolution. 400 dpi: [8 ~ 262 / 144 / 1 pulse step] After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing NVRAM, use this SP and SP2-109-3 to adjust the laser beam pitch. |
| | 2* | 600 dpi | Adjusts the laser beam pitch value for 600 dpi resolution. 600 dpi: [30 ~ 284 / 168 / 1 pulse step] After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing NVRAM, use this SP and SP2-109-4 to adjust the laser beam pitch. |
| | 3* | 400 dpi Initial Setting | Initializes the laser beam pitch for 400 dpi using the value for SP2-109-1. After entering a value for SP2-109-1, this SP must be used. |
| | 4* | 600 dpi Initial Setting | Initializes the laser beam pitch for 600 dpi using the value for SP2-109-2. After entering a value for SP2-109-2, this SP must be used. |
| | 5* | Auto Pitch Adjustment Interval | Sets the interval for automatic laser beam pitch adjustment. [0 ~ 65535 / 1000 / 1 step] When the number of times that the resolution has been changed reaches this value, the laser unit position is automatically corrected. |
| | 6 | Current LD Unit Position | Displays the current LD unit position (number of pulses from home position). If this is different from the value of 2-109-1 or 2-109-2, LD unit positioning has failed. |

F

| SP2 | | Mode Number | | Fund | ction and [Setting] |
|-------|-----|------------------------------|--|---|--|
| 2109* | 7 | Beam Pitch Change Counter | Displays ho been chang changed.) | ow mang ged (how | y times the LD unit position has w many times the resolution has |
| | | | When the la | aser bea reset to | am pitch adjustment is done, this zero. |
| | 8 | Beam Pitch Data Reset | Resets the | values | of SP2-109-6 and SP2-109-7. |
| | | | After replac | cing the | LD unit, this SP mode must be |
| | | | performed. | See the | e LD Unit Removal Procedure. |
| 2110 | Tes | st Mode dpi | Sets the sc [See below | anning / 8 / 0 - | resolution (dpi). DFU ~ 18] |
| | | | | 0 | 400 x 400 dpi |
| | | | | 1 | 391 x 406 dpi |
| | | | | 2 | 406 x 391 dpi |
| | | | | 4 | 300 x 300 dpi |
| | | | Range | 8 | 600 x 600 dpi |
| | | | | 15 | 439 x 430 dpi |
| | | | | 16 | 476 x 476 dpi |
| | | | | 17 | 483 x 465 dpi |
| | | | | 18 | 465 x 483 dpi |
| 2112 | Pol | ygon Motor Off Timer | Input the tin after the pri time and er If set to zer | ne that inter ha ntered th o, the p | the polygon motor is to switch off s remained idle for the specified he standby mode. olygon motor never switches off |
| | | | in standby i the energy ignore the z [0 ~ 60 s / 1 | mode. H saver n zero set 10 s / 5 | However, if the machine enters node, the polygon motor will ting and switch itself off. s step] |
| 2201* | Dev | velopment Bias Adjustment | | | |
| | 1* | Development Bias | Adjusts the Use as a te from an agi [-200 ~ -700 | develo emporar ing drur 0 / -510 | pment bias for copying. y <i>measure to correct faint copies</i> n. V / 10V step] |
| | 2* | ID Sensor Pattern | Adjusts the pattern for V [- 200 ~ -70 | develo Vsp)0 / - 38(| pment bias for the ID sensor)V / 10V step] |
| 2207 | For | ced Toner Supply | Forces the intervals for | toner be r up to 3 | ottle to supply toner at 1-second 30 seconds. To start, press (#). |
| 2208* | 1* | Toner Supply Mode | Selects the 0 : Sensor c 1: Image pix If you select default valut a temporary | toner n control xel cour ct 1, SP2 ue. Use y measu | node. nt. 2-209-002 should be set to its image pixel count modes only as ure if the ID or TD sensor is |
| 2200* | Tar | er Curply Data | defective. | 1000000 | upply roto |
| 2209. | 1* | Toner Rate | Sets the am the toner su Increasing to clutch on tin to make lots black. [10 ~ 800 m | nount of upply m this valu me. Use s of cop | f toner supplied every second by otor. We reduces the toner supply the a lower value if the user tends bies that have a high proportion of 0 mg/s / 5 mg/s step] |

| SP2 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|--|--|
| 2209* | 2* | Toner Supply Correction Data | Displays the toner supply correction coefficient (K). It can also be used to adjust K, but the value is changed again when VT is measured for the next copy. The toner supply rate depends on the amount of toner in the toner bottle. This change is corrected using this coefficient. This SP can be used to check the toner supply condition. The lower the value of K, the lower the toner density. [25 ~ 300 / 300 / 25 step] |
| 2210* | ID S | Sensor Pattern Interval | Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern prints. |
| | *1 | Job Page Count | Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern printing. For users that do not make many copies daily, set a smaller interval to compensate for the effects of seasonal and weather changes. [0 ~ 200 / 10 / 1] |
| | *2 | Forced Page Count | Forces creation of the ID sensor pattern to prevent low density copies for customers who use the copier for long copy jobs. [2 ~ 999 / 200 / 1] |
| 2213* | 1* | Copies After Toner Near- End | Selects the number of copies that can be printed once the copier has detected toner near-end. Select 1 or 2 if the customer normally makes copies of high density. 0 : 90 copies 1: No copies 2: 10 copies |
| 2220* | Vre | f Manual Setting | Adjusts the TD sensor reference voltage (Vref). [1.0 ~ 5.00 V / 4.00V / 0.01V step] |
| | | Change this value after replaced contains toner. 1. Check the value of S and the machine that 2. Install the test develor SP2-220. 3. After the test, put back back to the original values. | cing the development unit with another unit that P2-220 in both the machine containing the test unit you are going to move it to. pment unit, and then input the VREF for this unit into k the old development unit, and change SP2-220 alue. |
| 2223* | Vt D | Display | Displays the TD sensor output voltage for each copy. |
| | 1* | Current | Displays the TD sensor output voltage for the immediately previous copy. |
| | 2* | Average Previous 10 copies | Displays the average of the most recent TD sensor outputs (from the previous 10 copies). |
| | 3* | Rate of Change | Displays the rate of change in the TD sensor output. |
| | 4* | GAIN | Displays the GAIN value used to calculate the on time for the toner supply motor. |
| | 5* | Image Pixel Count | Displays the image pixel count. |

| SP2 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------|--------------------------|---|
| 2301 | Tran | sfer Current Adjustment | Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt during |
| | | 1 | copying the 5 phases listed below. |
| | 1* | 1st Side of Paper | Printing the first side of the paper (image area). |
| | | | If the user uses thicker paper, the current may have |
| | | | 10 be increased to ensure sumclent transfer of toner. |
| | | | $B079. [20 \approx 100 \mu A / 35 / 1 \mu A step]$ |
| | 2* | 2nd Side of Paper | Printing the second side of the paper (image area) |
| | 2 | | Finding the second side of the paper (intage area). B070: [20 ~ 100µÅ / 35 / 1µÅ step] |
| | | | B082: [20 \sim 100µA / 40] / 1µA step] |
| | 3* | Leading Edge | Conving at leading edge of the paper |
| | Ŭ | | Increase the current to separate the paper from the |
| | | | drum properly in high humidity and high temperature |
| | | | conditions. |
| | | | B079: [20 ~ 100μA / 35 / 1μA step] |
| | | | B082: [20 ~ 100μA / 45] / 1μA step] |
| | 4* | Bypass Feed | Copying from the by-pass tray (image area) for the |
| | | | B082 (45 cpm). |
| | | | If the user normally feeds thicker paper from the |
| | | | B082: [20 \sim 100µ Δ / 45 / 1µ Δ step] |
| | 5* | Leading Edge Bypass Feed | Copying at the leading edge of paper fed from the |
| | Ŭ | | by-pass tray for the B082 (45 cpm). |
| | | | Increase the current to separate the paper from the |
| | | | drum properly in high humidity and high temperature |
| | | | conditions. |
| | 0.1 | | B082: [20 ~ 100μA / 60 / 1μA step] |
| | 6^ | Bypass Feed (35 cpm) | Copying from the by-pass tray (image area) for the |
| | | | D079 (35 cpm). $P070 (20 \sim 100 \text{ u} \text{ A} / 35 / 1 \text{ u} \text{ A stop})$ |
| | 7* | Leading Edge Bynass Feed | Conving at the leading edge of paper fed from the |
| | ' | (35 cpm) | by-pass tray for the B079 (35 cpm). |
| | | (| B079: [20 ~ 100µA / 45 / 1µA step] |
| 2309* | Tra | nsfer Current Correction | Corrects the transfer current for the items below. |
| | 1* | Paper Lower Width (a) | Adjusts the lower paper width threshold for the |
| | | | transfer current, charge voltage, and development |
| | | | bias corrections. |
| | | | Use this SP when an image problem (e.g., |
| | | | paper. If the paper width is smaller than this value. |
| | | | the transfer current will be multiplied by the factor in |
| | | | SP2-309-3 (paper tray) or SP2-309-5 (by-pass). |
| | | | [0 ~ 297 / 150 / 1 mm step] |
| | 2* | Paper Upper Width (b) | Adjusts the upper paper width threshold for the |
| | | | transfer current, charge voltage, and development |
| | | | As for SP2-309-1 but the factors are in SP2-300-4 |
| | | | (paper tray) and SP2-309-6 (by-pass). |
| | | | [0 ~ 297 / 216 / 1 mm step] |
| | 3* | Paper Tray (α) | Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient |
| | | | used if the paper width is less than the setting of |
| | | | SP2-309-1. |
| | | | [1.0 ~ 3 / 1.2 / 0.1 mm step] |

| SP2 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------------|------------------------|---|
| 2309* | 4 * | Paper Tray (β) | Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient |
| | | | used if the paper width is less than the setting of |
| | | | SP2-309-2. |
| | | | [1.0 ~ 3 / 1.2 / 0.1 mm step] |
| | 5* | By-Pass Feed (γ) | Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient |
| | | | |
| | | | $[10 \sim 3/1.5/0.1 \text{ mm step}]$ |
| | 6* | By-Pass Feed (δ) | Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient |
| | - | | used if the paper width is less than the setting of |
| | | | SP2-309-2. |
| | | | [1.0 ~ 3 / 1.5 / 0.1 mm step] |
| 2801* | TD | Sensor Initial Setting | Performs the TD sensor initial setting. This SP |
| | | | to make the TD sensor output about 4.0 V. Press |
| | | | "Execute" to start. After finishing this, the TD |
| | | | sensor output voltage is displayed. |
| | | | Use this mode only after installing the machine, |
| | | | changing the TD sensor, or adding new developer. |
| 2802* | TD | Sensor Manual Setting | Allows you to adjust the TD sensor output manually |
| | 1* | VIE | for the following. |
| | 1 | V13 | Change this value after replacing the development |
| | | | unit with another one that already contains toner. |
| | | | For example, when using a development unit from |
| | | | another machine for test purposes. To adjust VT, |
| | | | use a similar procedure as for SP2-220. |
| | | | [1.00 ~ 5.00V / 4.78V / 0.02V step] |
| | 2* | VIMAX | Adjusts the maximum value for SP2-802-1. |
| | 2* | | $[1.00 \sim 3.000 / 4.760 / 0.020 \text{ step}]$ |
| | 5 | | $1.00 \sim 5.00 \text{ / } 1.00 \text{ / } 0.02 \text{ step}$ |
| 2805 | Dev | /eloper Initialization | Performs the developer initialization. Press |
| | | • | "Execute" to start. |
| | | | This SP should be performed after doing SP2-801-1 |
| | | | at installation and after replacing the drum. |
| 2902 | 2 | IPU Test Pattern | Prints the test patterns for the IPU chip. |
| | | | $[0 \sim 1570 / 15 \text{km}]$ |
| | | | BICU or the SBU is defective. If the printout is not |
| | | | OK, the BICU is defective. |
| | 3 | Printing Test Pattern | Prints the printer test patterns. Select the number of |
| | | | the test pattern that you want to print. |
| | | | $[0 \sim 38 / 0 / 1 \text{ step}]$ |
| | | | I his SP mode is useful for finding whether the |
| | | | satisfactory the LDDR is defective |
| | | | $[0 \sim 38 / 0]$ |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

| SP2 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 2909* | Ma | in Scan Magnification | |
| | 1* | Copier | Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction for copy mode. Press ${}$ to toggle ±. [-2.0 ~ +2.0 / 0 / 0.1% step] |
| | 2* | Printer | Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction when printing from a personal computer. Press $^{\bullet}$ to toggle ±. [-2.0 ~ +2.0 / 0 / 0.1% step] |
| 2911 | Tra | nsfer Current On/Off Timing | Adjusts the transfer current timing for the three items below. |
| | 1 | La (On Timing) | On timing at leading edge. [–30 ~ +30 / 0 mm / 1 mm step] |
| | 2 | Lb (Switch Timing) | Transfer current switch timing. This determines when the leading edge stops and the image area current begins (see SP2-301). $[0 \sim +30 / 10 \text{ mm} / 1 \text{ mm step}]$ |
| | 3 | Lc (Off Timing) | Transfer current timing (e.g. –5 mm) is 5 mm after the trailing edge. [–30 ~ +30 / – 5 mm / 1 mm step] |
| 2912 | 1 | Drum Reverse Rotation Interval | DFU. |
| 2913* | 1* | Print Density for Test Pattern | Sets the print density for the patterns printed with SP2-902-3. $10 \sim 15 / 15 / 1$ |
| 2914* | Pro | cess Control Setting – By- | Adjusts the charge roller voltage for the following items. |
| | 1* | Cα | Adjusts the charge roller voltage used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-1. Use this SP when an image problem (such as white spots at the center of black dots or breaks in thin black lines) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray. [0 ~ 400 / 150 / 10V step] |
| | 2* | Сβ | Adjusts the charge roller voltage used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-2. Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray. [0 ~ 400 / 0 / 10V step] |
| | 3* | Βγ | Adjusts the development bias used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-1. Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray. [0 ~ 300 / 200 / 10V step] |

| SP2 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|---------------|------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| 2914* | 4* | Βδ | Adjusts the development bias used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts |
| | | | depends on the value of SP2-309-2. |
| | | | Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from |
| | | | the by-pass feed tray. |
| | | | [0 ~ 300 / 50 / 10V step] |
| 2920 | LD | Off Check | DFU |
| 2960* | Tor | er Overflow Sensor | Selects whether the toner overflow sensor is |
| | | | activated or not. |
| 000 (# | 4.4 | | 0 = No, 1 = Yes |
| 2964* | 1* | Forming | Applies a pattern of toner to the transfer belt at a defined interval between sheets on the transfer belt in order to reduce friction between the belt surface and the cleaning blade. |
| | | | Under conditions of high temperature and high humidity, the density control feature may reduce the amount of toner, which also reduces the amount of toner on the surface of the transfer belt. With less toner on the belt, the friction between the belt and the blade increases, and could cause the blade to bend or scour the surface of the belt. |
| 2969* | LD | – PWM Selection | |
| | 1* | Printer Output LD – PWM Selection | Changes the LD power PWM control for printed copies. A smaller value produces a lighter image. Use this SP to adjust the image density for printing from a personal computer or printing a received fax message. $[1 \sim 5 / 1 / 1 \text{ step}]$ |
| | 2* | Fax Output LD – PWM Selection | Changes the LD power PWM control for printed fax messages. A smaller value produces a lighter image Use this SP to adjust the image density for printing fax messages. $[1 \sim 5 / 1 / 1 \text{ step}]$ |
| 2971 | Tor | er Full Sensor Count | DFU |
| 2972* | Gra | yscale Limit | A new feature of this machine that controls the halftone density level to prevent deterioration of the OPC. The halftone density is detected by the ID sensor, and the machine adjusts the intensity of the LD beam according to the upper/lower limit setting. |
| | 1* | Upper Limit | Defines the upper limit for grayscale. |
| | | | A larger value allows a wider range of halftones at the pale end of the scale. If the image contains pale areas with fuzzy borders surrounded by dark areas, reduce this value to make the borders clearer. $[0 \sim 100 / 60 / 1 \text{ step}]$ |
| | 2 * | Lower Limit | Defines the lower limit for grayscale. |
| | | | A smaller value allows a wider range of halftones at |
| | | | the dark end of the scale. |
| | | | [0 ~ 100 / 40 / 1 step] |

| SP2 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 2973* | 1* | Grayscale Copy Interval Check | Sets the halftone operation interval in order to prevent deterioration of the OPC. If the number of copies exceeds this setting, at the end of the job, or if the door is opened and closed, charge correction is executed. $I0 \sim 1000 / 100 / 10$ step] |
| 2974* | 1* | Image Density Adjustment | Adjusts image density. Changing this setting adjusts development bias and ID sensor output voltage that in turn raises or lowers image density. $[1 \sim 5 / 3 / 1 \text{ step}]$ |
| 2975 | 1* | Toner End Time | Sets a time limit for issuing the toner near end warning on the operation panel. The time may need to be shorter for customers who run especially large print jobs (working at night, for example) to ensure earlier warning of the toner near end condition so toner out does not interrupt a long job. $[0 \sim 2,000 / 0 / 10 \text{ s step}]$ 0: Normal end detection (90 sheets after near-end detected (SP2213) |
| 2976 | 1* | Toner Bottle On Count | Displays the total ON time of the toner supply motor, calculated from when the toner bottle was replaced. Use this to check that the toner end count (SP2975) is working properly. [0 ~ 2,000,000 / 0 / 1 ms step] When SP2975 is set to any value other than "0", this value is displayed when it matches the setting of SP2975. When SP2975 is set to "0", SP2976 is disabled. SP2976 is automatically set to zero by toner end recovery. |
| 2980* | Cha | arge Counter | Sets the number of pages to print after toner and carrier initialization before the charge input is increased to compensate for deterioration over time in the polarity of the carrier. [0 ~ 1000000 / 0 / 1 step] The strength in the polarity of the carrier in the toner will eventually decrease and cause lower charge output. Setting the charge output to increase after a specified number of copies can compensate for this effect. |
| 2981 | Pol Swi | ygon Mirror Revolution itching | Switches the number revolutions per minute of the polygon mirror motor. DFU [0 ~ 2 / 0 / 1] 0: Rpm determined by engine 1: Rpm for B079 (35 cpm) 2: Rpm for B082 (45 cpm) |

SP3-xxx: Process

| SP3 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|---|--|
| 3001* | ID | Sensor Initial Setting | |
| | 1* | ID Sensor PWM Setting | Allows you to reset the PWM of the ID sensor LED to avoid a service call error after clearing NVRAM or replacing the NVRAM. [0 ~ 255 / 100 / 1 step] <i>The PWM data is stored by executing SP-3001-2.</i> |
| | 2* | ID Sensor Initialization | Performs the ID sensor initial setting. ID sensor output for the bare drum (VsG) is adjusted automatically to 4.0 ±0.2 V. Press "Execute" to start. Perform this setting after replacing or cleaning the ID sensor, replacing the drum, or clearing NVRAM. |
| 3103* | ID : | Sensor Output Display | Displays the current VSG, VSP, VSDP, and grayscale control. |
| | 1* | Vsg (Drum Surface Output) | [0V ~ 5.00V] |
| | 2* | Vsp (Pattern Output) | If the ID sensor does not detect the ID pattern, |
| | 3* | Vpdp (Immediate Post- Pattern Output). | VSP = 5.0 V/VSG = 5.0 V is displayed and an SC code is generated. |
| | 4* | Vsm/Vsg (Immediate Grayscale Post-Pattern Output) | If the ID sensor does not detect the bare area of the drum, VSP = 0.0 V/VSG =0.0 V is displayed and an SC code is generated. |
| 3905* | Fus | er Cleaning | Toner and carbon clinging to the hot roller strippers can cause poor print quality. To prevent this, toner and carbon are dislodged from the hot roller strippers in two ways: 1) jogging the fusing/feed-out motor 3 times after every print job. 2) freely rotating the hot roller for 12 s. For details, see Section "6.6.2 Hot Roller Stripper Cleaning". Also see SP 5959. |
| | 1 | Number of Rotations | Prescribes the number of times the fusing/exit motor is switched off/on in order to dislodge toner clinging to the hot roller strippers. [0 ~ 60 / 1 / 1] Raising this setting can increase wear on the hot roller and cleaning roller and shorten the service life of the hot roller. |
| | 2 | Number of Pages | Prescribes the number of pages to print before the fusing/feed-out motor is jogged (switched off and on rapidly) to dislodge toner and carbon from the hot roller strippers. [0 ~ 1000 / 15 / 1] <i>Normally the motor is jogged once (switched off and on rapidly) after every print job that exceeds 15 pages.</i> |

SP4-xxx: Scanner

| SP4 | Мо | de Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 4008* | Scanner Sub Scan Magnification | | Adjusts the magnification of the sub scan direction during scanning. Changing this value changes the scanner motor speed. Press (**) to toggle ±. [-0.9 ~ 0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1% step] |
| 4010* | Sca Reg | anner Leading Edge gistration | Adjusts the leading edge registration for scanning. Press (**) to toggle ±. As you enter a negative value, the image moves toward the leading edge. [-0.9 ~ 0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm step] |
| 4011* | Sca | anner Side-to-Side Registration | Adjusts side-to-side registration for scanning. Press (→) to toggle ±. As you enter negative values, the image will disappear at the left, and as you enter positive values, the image will appear at the left. [-4.6 ~ +4.6 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm step] |
| 4012* | Sca | anner Erase Margin | Adjusts scanning margins for the following items. Do not adjust unless the customer desires a scanner margin greater than the printer margin. |
| | 1* | Leading Edge | Adjusts leading edge erase margin for sub scanning. Specification: $3 \pm 2 \text{ mm}$ $[0 \sim 9 / 1.0 / 0.1 \text{ mm step}]$ |
| | 2* | Trailing Edge | Adjusts trailing edge erase margin for sub scanning. Specification: $2 \pm 2 \text{ mm}$ [0 ~ 9 / 0.5 / 0.1 mm step] |
| | 3* | Right | Adjusts right margin for main scanning. Specification: +2.5 ~ -1.5 mm [0 ~ 9 / 0.5 / 0.1 mm step] |
| | 4* | Left | Adjusts left margin for main scanning. Specification: 2 ± 1.5 mm [0 ~ 9 / 1.0 / 0.1 mm step] |
| 4013 | Sca | anner Free Run | Performs a scanner free run with the exposure lamp off. |
| 4301 | APS Sensor Output Display | | Displays the time required to detect the size of the paper on the scanner exposure glass. Asterisks (*) are displayed if the size cannot be detected. Dimensions are displayed in inches for North America and in mm for other areas. |
| 4303* | APS A5/LT Size Detection | | Determines whether the original is A5/HLT size when the APS sensor does not detect the original size. 0 : not detected, 1: A5 length $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$ <i>If 1 is selected, paper sizes that cannot be</i> <i>detected are regarded as A5 SEF. If 0 is</i> <i>selected, "Cannot detect original size" will be</i> <i>displayed.</i> |

| SP4 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------|------------------------------------|--|
| 4305* | 8K/10 | Sensor Output Display | Selects whether or not the copier determines that the original is 8K/16K size when the APS sensor does not detect the original size. This SP is intended for use with 8K/16K Chinese paper sizes only. For China/Taiwan area: [0,1 / 0 /1] 0: 8k/16k not detected – Non-standard size 1: 8K, 16K paper size detect enabled Other areas: [0,1 / 0 /1] 0: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 1: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 1: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 1: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 2: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 2: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 2: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size 3: 8k/16k not detected - Non-standard size |
| | | | 0 ~ 1 /1 / 1 step 0: Original size detection at power on disabled. 1: Original size detection at power on disabled. |
| 1128 | 1 | Elag Display | |
| 4420 | 2 | Start | DEU |
| | 2 | Flag Reset | DEU |
| 4901* | SBU | Settings | DFU |
| | 22* | A/D Standard Voltage in AE Mode | DFU |
| | 23* | BK Adjustment | DFU |
| | 24* | EO Adjustment | DFU |
| | 26* | Range Adjustment | DFU |
| | 27* | Gain Adjustment – Ech | DFU |
| | 28* | Gain Adjustment – Och | DFU |
| | 29* | Apli. Dummy Range Adjustment | DFU |
| | 30* | Apli. Range Adjustment | DFU |
| | 31* | Apli. Gain Adjustment – Ech | DFU |
| | 32* | Apli. Gain Adjustment – Och | DFU |
| | 33 | Dummy Gain Adjustment – Ech | DFU |
| | 34 | Och | UFU |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] | |
|---------------|--------|---|---|--|
| 4903 * | Filter | Setting | | |
| | 5 | Full Size Mode | Selects whether the copy is always full size, even if the magnification ratio has been changed. Set to 1 to check the main scan magnification. If the magnification is not 100%, the image processing circuits could be malfunctioning. [0~1 / 0 / 1 step] 0: No. Normal operation 1: Yes. Main scan magnification always full-size. <i>This SP is used to determine whether</i> <i>magnification is operating correctly. If this SP is</i> <i>set to 1 can make it easier to determine which</i> <i>part of the IPU is malfunctioning.</i> | |
| | 7 | Image Shift in Magnification | Adjusts the amount of pixel shift in the main scan direction in the magnification mode. DFU [0~7199 / 0 / 1 step] | |
| | 8* | Fax 25%, 50% Reduction | Determines whether 25% and 50% reduction is available in the fax mode. DFU [0~3 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Conducts fax mode OR processing for main scan for resolution below 100 dpi in only Text mode. 2: Conducts pre-filter processing for fax mode. 3: Conducts fax Text mode OR processing for main scan for resolution below 100 dpi. Pre-filter processing is done in every mode except Fax Text mode. | |
| | 10* | Pre-Filter: Text Pre-Filter: Photo Mode | Selects the filter processing setting for smoothing in order to reduce the incidence of moiré in images. Specifically, it sets 1) the compression rate for parallel lines in the main scan direction and for long lines in the sub scan direction, and 2) the strength of smoothing. See below. Enter the appropriate number with the10-key pad then press (#). [0~9 / 0 / 1] These settings attempt to smooth lines without making them standout. Increasing the strength of a setting can reduce the incidence of moiré but can also decrease sharpness. Selects the Pre-Filter coefficient in the main scan | |
| | 12 | | direction for photo mode. (Chap.6, "Image Processing". [0~9 / 0 / 1 step] | |
| | 13* | Pre-Filter: Text/Photo | Selects the Pre-Filter coefficient in the main scan direction for text/photo mode, and emphasizes lines parallel to the direction of feed. (Chap.6, "Image Processing". [0~9 / 0 / 1 step] Increasing this value strengthens smoothing but can also increase the occurrence of moiré and reduce sharpness. | |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|--|--|
| 4903* | 15* | Pre-Filter: Light | Selects the Pre-Filter coefficient in the main scan direction for low density mode and enhances lines parallel to the direction of feed to prevent moiré. (Chap.6, "Image Processing". |
| | | | Increasing this value strengthens smoothing but can also increase the occurrence of moiré and reduce sharpness. |
| | 16* | Pre-Filter: Generation | Selects the Pre-Filter coefficient in the main scan direction for copied original mode to emphasize lines parallel to the direction of feed. (Chap.6, "Image Processing". [0~9 / 0 / 1 step] Increasing this value strengthens smoothing but can also increase the occurrence of moiré and reduce sharpness. |
| | 20* | Main Filter Level: Text 25%-64% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the text mode in the main scan direction. [0~15 / 9 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 21* | Sub Filter Level: Text 25%- 64% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the text mode in the sub scan direction. [0~13 / 13 / 1 step] (<i>c</i> -6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 22* | Main Filter Strength: Text 25%-64% | Selects the MTF filter strength in the main scan direction for the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>c</i> 6.2 <i>Image Processing</i>) |
| | 23* | Sub Filter Strength: Text 25%-64% | Selects the MTF filter strength in the sub scan direction for the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 24* | Main Filter Level: Text 65%-154% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the main scan direction in the text mode. [0~15 / 12 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 25* | Sub Filter Level: Text 65%- 154% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~13 / 13 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 26* | Main Filter Strength: Text 65%-154% | Selects the MTF filter strength for the main scan direction in the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 <i>Image Processing</i>) |
| | 27* | Sub Filter Strength: Text 65%-154% | Selects the MTF filter strength for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>c</i> .2 <i>Image Processing</i>) |
| | 28* | Main Filter Level: Text 155%-256% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the main scan direction in the text mode. [0~15 / 14 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mod | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-----|---|---|
| 4903* | 29* | Sub Filter Level: Text 155%-256% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~13 / 13 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 30* | Main Filter Strength: Text 155%-256% | Selects the MTF filter strength for the main scan direction in the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 <i>Image Processing</i>) |
| | 31* | Sub Filter Strength: Text 155%-256% | Selects the MTF filter strength for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 32* | Main Filter Level: Text 257%-400% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~15 / 15 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 33* | Sub Filter Level: Text 257%-400% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~13 / 13 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 34* | Main Filter Strength: Text 257%-400% | Selects the MTF filter strength for the main scan direction in the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 35* | Sub Filter Strength: Text 257%-400% | Selects the MTF filter strength for the sub scan direction in the text mode. [0~7 / 2 / 1 step] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 36* | Photo MTF (Edge) | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for edges in the photo mode. Use this setting to sharpen text and lines. However, selecting a strong (high) setting could cause moiré to appear in images created with dots. [0~7 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (re6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 37* | Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode | Selects the filter coefficient for smoothing in the photo mode. The higher the number you select, the greater the applied smoothing effect. [0~7 / 2 / 1] (#6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|--|--|
| 4903* | 38* | Photo MTF (All) | Selects the MTF filter coefficient sharpening an entire image in the Photo mode. The higher the number you select, the greater the effect on sharpening low contrast text and thin lines. However, high setting could cause background to drop or, or cause moiré to appear in photos shaded with dots. [0~7 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (~6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 39 | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 25-64% | Selects the filter coefficient that affects the clarity in reproduction of edges for images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 25% to 64%. A higher setting increases effect of this adjustment and a lower setting decreases the effect. [0~7 / 1 / 1] This adjustment can improve the appearance of text and lines, but selecting a higher setting can cause moiré in photographs created with dots (newspaper and magazine photos). |
| | 40 | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 25-64% | Selects the filter coefficient that affects the clarity in reproduction of an entire page copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 25% to 64%. A higher setting increases effect of this adjustment and a lower setting decreases the effect. [0~7 / 4 / 1] This adjustment can improve the appearance of low density text, but selecting a higher setting can cause rough texture background to appear and also cause moiré in photographs created with dots (newspaper and magazine photos). |
| | 43* | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 65-154% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for text edges in the text/photo mode. Select a higher number to improve the clarity of text and lines. However, greatly increasing the value could increase the incidence of moiré. [0~7 / 1 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (~6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|---|---|
| 4903* | 44* | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 65-154% | Selects the filter coefficient to improve the clarity of the entire image within 65% - 154% in the Text/Photo mode. While this SP can improve the appearance of low contrast characters, an extremely large setting could cause background to fade or drop out completely or cause moiré to appear in images shaded with dots (newspapers, magazines, etc.) [0~7/4/1] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest ($= 6.2$ Image Processing) |
| | 47* | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 155-256% | Selects the MTF filter applied to improve the clarity of edges within 155%-256% magnification in the Text/Photo mode. While this SP can improve the appearance of text and lines, it could increase the incidence of moiré in images shaded with dots (newspapers, magazines, etc.) [0~7 / 1 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (=6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 48* | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 155-256% | Selects the MTF filter applied to improve the clarity of the entire image within 155%-256% magnification in the Text/Photo mode. While this SP can improve the appearance of low contrast text, it can also cause background to fade or drop out completely or increase the incidence of moiré. [0~7 / 4 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (r=6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 51* | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 257-400% | Selects the MTF filter applied to improve the clarity of edges within 257%-400% magnification in the Text/Photo mode. While this SP can improve the appearance of text and lines, it can also increase the incidence of moiré in images shaded with dots (newspapers, magazines, etc.) [0~7 / 1 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (re6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|--|---|
| 4903* | 52* | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 257-400% | Selects the MTF filter applied to improve the clarity of the entire image within 257%-400% magnification in the Text/Photo mode. While this SP can improve the appearance of low contrast text, it can also cause background to fade or drop out completely or increase the incidence of moiré. [0~7 / 4 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Softest 7: Sharpest (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 55* | Filter Level: Light Original | Selects the MTF filter coefficient for originals scanned in the Pale mode. While this SP can improve the appearance of low contrast originals, a very high setting can also increase the incidence of moiré. [0~6 / 6 /1] (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 56* | Filter Strength: Light Original | Selects the MTF filter strength to improve the contrast of originals scanned in the Pale mode. While selecting a larger number strengthens the effect of the filter to improve contrast, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~7 / 3 /1 step] 0: 1/32x 1: 1/16x 2: 1/8x 3: 1/4x 4: 1/2x 5: 1x 6: 2x 7: 4x (ref.2 Image Processing) |
| | 57* | Filter Level: Generation Copy | Selects the MTF filter coefficient to improve low contrast originals scanned in the Generation Copy mode. While selecting a higher number strengthens the effect of the filter to improve contrast, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~6 / 3 /1 step] (#6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-----|------|---|---|
| | 58* | Filter Strength: Generation Copy | Selects the MTF filter strength to improve the contrast of originals scanned in the Generation Copy mode. While selecting a larger number strengthens the effect of the filter to improve contrast, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~7 / 2 /1 step] 0: 1/32x 1: 1/16x 2: 1/8x 3: 1/4x 4: 1/2x 5: 1x 6: 2x 7: 4x (=6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 60* | Independent Dot Erase: Text Mode | Selects the independent dot erase level for originals scanned the Text mode. While selecting a higher setting erases more dots, setting a very high setting can cause very fine text or other detail to fade or drop out completely. [0~15 / 5 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Weakest (fewest dots erased) 15:Strongest (most dots erased) |
| | 62* | Independent Dot Erase: Text/Photo | Selects the independent dot erase level for originals scanned the Text/Photo mode. While selecting a higher setting erases more dots, setting a very high setting can cause very fine text or other detail to fade or drop out completely. [0~15 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Weakest (fewest dots erased) 15:Strongest (most dots erased) |
| | 63* | Independent Dot Erase: Light Original | Selects the independent dot erase level for originals scanned the Pale mode. While selecting a higher setting erases more dots, setting a very high setting can cause very fine text or other detail to fade or drop out completely. [0~15 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Weakest (fewest dots erased) 15:Strongest (most dots erased) |
| | 64 | Independent Dot Erase: Generation Copy | Selects the independent dot erase level for originals scanned the Generation Copy mode. While selecting a higher setting erases more dots, setting a very high setting can cause very fine text or other detail to fade or drop out completely. [0~15 / 8 / 1 step] 0: Off 1: Weakest (fewest dots erased) 15:Strongest (most dots erased) |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|---|---|
| 4903* | 65* | Background Erase Level: Text Mode | Adjusts the threshold for background erase in originals scanned in the Text mode. A higher setting reduces more dirty background, but a very high setting can cause the image to reverse or cause other unexpected results. [0~255 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off |
| | 66* | Background Erase Level: Photo Mode | Adjusts the threshold for background erase in originals scanned in the Photo mode. A higher setting reduces more dirty background, but a very high setting can cause the image to reverse or cause other unexpected results. [0~255 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off |
| | 67* | Background Erase Level: Text/Photo Mode | Adjusts the threshold for background erase in originals scanned in the Text/Photo mode. A higher setting reduces more dirty background, but a very high setting can cause the image to reverse or cause other unexpected results. [0~255 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off |
| | 68* | Background Erase Level: Light Original | Adjusts the threshold for background erase in originals scanned in the Pale mode. A higher setting reduces more dirty background, but a very high setting can cause the image to reverse or cause other unexpected results. [0~255 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off |
| | 69* | Background Erase Level: Generation Copy | Adjusts the threshold for background erase in originals scanned in the Generation Copy mode. A higher setting reduces more dirty background, but a very high setting can cause the image to reverse or cause other unexpected results. [0~255 / 0 / 1 step] 0: Off |
| | 75* | Line Width Correction: Generation Mode | Enter the appropriate number with the 10-key pad then press (#). This SP determines whether line thickness is adjusted in the main and/or sub scan direction. [0~3 / 2 / 1] 0: None 1: Thin 2: Thin 3: Thick To adjust the level of adjustment in the main scan/sub scan direction, use SP4903 076/SP4903 077. |
| | 76* | LWC Threshold (Main Scan): Generation Mode | Selects the threshold for line width detection in the main scan direction in originals copied in the Generation Copy mode. [0~5 / 1 / 1 step] Low: More difficult to thicken thin lines. High: Easier to thicken thin lines. |

| SP4 | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|------|---|--|
| 4903* | 77* | LWC Threshold (Sub Scan): Generation Mode | Selects the threshold for line width detection in the sub scan direction in copies copied in the Generation Copy mode. [0~5 / 1 / 1 step] Low: More difficult to thicken thin lines. High: Easier to thicken thin lines. |
| | 79 | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 25-64% | Selects the strength of the MTF coefficient filter setting selected with SP4903 039 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 25% to 64%. A higher setting increases the strength of the effect, and a lower setting decreases the effect. While a higher setting can improve the clarity of text and thin lines, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~3/3/1] (-6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 80* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25-64% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient of the edge detection level of the filter setting selected with SP4903 039 to adjust the clarity of edges in images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 25% to 64%. A lower setting increases the number of edges detected, and a higher setting decreases the number of edges detected. A higher setting affects the density of lines with a steep slope and to a lesser degree affects the density of gently sloping lines. Areas other than sloping lines are not affected by this adjustment. If edge detection is set high, then the range of edge detected is expanded to include any background. (<i>e</i>6.2 Image Processing) [0~15 / 3 / 1] Most edges detected. Settings near zero increase the range of the SP4903 039 setting. |

| SP4 | Mod | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|---------------|-----|--|---|
| 4903 * | 81* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 25-64% | Adjusts the of the filter coefficient magnification setting selected with SP4903 039 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 25% to 64%. Specifically, this settings affects how edges are detected at sharp edges and at faint borders where no edges exist. A lower setting reproduces a noticeable difference in the appearance of sharp and faint borders, and a higher setting reduces this effect. While selecting a lower setting makes it easier to distinguish the differences between sharp and faint borders, this can also cause moiré to appear in the image. A higher setting can weaken the clarity of edges. [0~15 / 12 / 1] |
| | 82* | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 65-154% | Selects the strength of the MTF coefficient filter setting selected with SP4903 043 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 65% to 154%. A higher setting increases the strength of the effect, and a lower setting decreases the effect. While a higher setting can improve the clarity of text and thin lines, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~3 / 3 / 1] (#6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 83* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient of the edge detection level of the filter setting selected with SP4903 043 to adjust the clarity of edges in images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 65% to 154%. A lower setting increases the number of edges detected, and a higher setting decreases the number of edges detected. A higher setting affects the density of lines with a steep slope and to a lesser degree affects the density of gently sloping lines. Areas other than sloping lines are not affected by this adjustment. If edge detection is set high, then the range of edge detection is expanded to include any background. [0~15 / 3 / 1] Most edges detected. Settings near zero increase the range of the SP4903 043 setting. (•6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 I | Mode | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|---------------|------|---|--|
| 4903 * | 84* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 65-154% | Adjusts the of the filter coefficient magnification setting selected with SP4903 043 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 65% to 154%. Specifically, this settings affects how edges are detected at sharp edges and at faint borders where no edges exist. A lower setting reproduces a noticeable difference in the appearance of sharp and faint borders, and a higher setting reduces this effect. While selecting a lower setting makes it easier to distinguish the differences between sharp |
| | | | and faint borders, this can also cause moiré to appear in the image. A higher setting can weaken the clarity of edges. [0~15 / 12 / 1] (<i>c</i> 6 2 Image Processing) |
| | 85* | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 155-256% | Selects the strength of the MTF coefficient filter setting selected with SP4903 047 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 155% to 256%. A higher setting increases the strength of the effect, and a lower setting decreases the effect. While a higher setting can improve the clarity of text and thin lines, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~3/3/1] |
| | 86* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155-256% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient of the edge detection level of the filter setting selected with SP4903 047 to adjust the clarity of edges in images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 155% to 256%. A lower setting increases the number of edges detected, and a higher setting decreases the number of edges detected. A higher setting affects the density of lines with a steep slope and to a lesser degree affects the density of gently sloping lines. Areas other than sloping lines are not affected by this adjustment. If edge detection is set high, then the range of edge detection is expanded to include any background. [0~15 / 3 / 1] Fewest edges detected. Settings near zero increase the range of the SP4903 047 setting. Most edges detected. Settings near 15 decrease the range of the SP3903 047 setting. (<i>•</i>6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mod | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-----|---|--|
| 4903* | 87* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 155-256% | Adjusts the of the filter coefficient magnification setting selected with SP4903 047 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 155% to 256%. |
| | | | Specifically, this settings affects how edges are detected at sharp edges and at faint borders where no edges exist. A lower setting reproduces a noticeable difference in the appearance of sharp and faint borders, and a higher setting reduces this effect. While selecting a lower setting makes it easier to distinguish the differences between sharp and faint borders, this can also cause moiré to appear in the image. A higher setting can weaken the clarity of edges. [0~15 / 12 / 1] |
| | 88* | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 257-400% | Selects the strength of the MTF coefficient filter setting selected with SP4903 051 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 257% to 400%. A higher setting increases the strength of the effect, and a lower setting decreases the effect. While a higher setting can improve the clarity of text and thin lines, a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~3/3/1] |
| | 89* | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257-400% | Selects the MTF filter coefficient of the edge detection level of the filter setting selected with SP4903 039 to adjust the clarity of edges in images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 25% to 64%. A lower setting increases the number of edges detected, and a higher setting decreases the number of edges detected. A higher setting affects the density of lines with a steep slope and to a lesser degree affects the density of gently sloping lines. Areas other than sloping lines are not affected by this adjustment. If edge detection is set high, then the range of edge detection is expanded to include any background. [0~15 / 3 / 1] Fewest edges detected. Settings near zero increase the range of the SP4903 039 setting. Most edges detected. Settings near 15 decrease the range of the SP3903 039 setting. (<i>•</i>6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 M | Node Number | Function and [Setting] |
|---------|---|--|
| 4903* 9 | 90* Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 257-400% | Adjusts the of the filter coefficient magnification setting selected with SP4903 051 to adjust the clarity of edges of images copied in the Text/Photo mode and enlarged in the range 257% to 400%. |
| | | Specifically, this settings affects how edges are detected at sharp edges and at faint borders where no edges exist. A lower setting reproduces a noticeable difference in the appearance of sharp and faint borders, and a higher setting reduces this effect. While selecting a lower setting makes it *easier to distinguish the differences between sharp and faint borders, this can also cause moiré to appear in the image. A higher setting can weaken the clarity of edges. [0~15 / 12 / 1] |
| 9 | 91* Filter Strength: Photo (Edge) | (~6.2 Image Processing) Adjusts the strength of the MTF filter selected with SP4903 036 that adjusts the edge clarity of images scanned in the Photo mode. While selecting a higher setting can improve the clarity of text and lines, selecting a very high setting can increase the incidence of moiré. [0~3 / 2 / 1] 0: Weakest 3: Strongest (~6.2 Image Processing) |
| 9 | 92* Filter Adj.: Photo (Edge Det.) | Selects the MTF filter coefficient of the edge detection level of the filter setting selected with SP4903 036 to adjust the clarity of edges in images copied in the Photo mode. A lower setting increases the number of edges detected, and a higher setting decreases the number of edges detected. A higher setting affects the density of lines with a steep slope and to a lesser degree affects the density of gently sloping lines. Areas other than sloping lines are not affected by this adjustment. If edge detection is set high, then the range of edge detection is expanded to include any background. [0~15 / 0 / 1] Fewest edges detected. Settings near zero increase the range of the SP4903 036 setting. 15: Most edges detected. Settings near 15 decrease the range of the SP3903 036 setting. (<i>•</i>6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mod | e Number | Functio | on and [Setting | g] | |
|---------------|-----|--|---|--|---|--|
| 4903 * | 93* | Filter Adj.: Photo (Mag.%) | Adjusts magnif adjust and en • Sp are bor rep app hig • Wh to c anc app we [0~15 / ⁻¹ | the of the MT ication setting clarity of image larged in the ra- ecifically, this set detected at sh detected at sh roduces a noti bearance of sh her setting red bile selecting a distinguish the d faint borders, bear in the ima aken the clarity 15 / 1] | F filter cc selected es copied ange 257 settings a harp edge edges e: ceable di arp and f uces this lower set differenci this can ge. A hig y of edge | befficient with SP4903 036 to in the Photo mode % to 400%. ffects how edges es and at faint xist. A lower setting fference in the aint borders, and a effect. titing makes it easier es between sharp also cause moiré to her setting can s. |
| 4904* | IPU | Settina | (~ 0.2 II | | | |
| | 2* | Grayscale Photo Mode | Selects Photo M [0~1 / 0 0: Dith sam on t Dith 1: Erro sett or "0 pan adju Selects mode. | the method of lode. / 1] ering and smo he as the settin he operation p ering can be a or diffusion and ing is the same Glossy Photo" el in Photo Mo isted with SP4 the size of the | grayscal othing. T g for "Prii anel in Pl djusted w I MTF filte e as the s selected de. Error 903 036 a dither m | e processing for the his setting is the nt Photo" selected hoto Mode. vith SP4903 037. er processing. This etting for "Normal" on the operation diffusion can be and 038. atrix for the photo |
| | | | [0~371 Valuo | / I] Method | Lines | Effect |
| | | | | Dither 8 x 8 | 75 | Screening |
| | | | 1 | Dither 8 x 8 | 106 | Best gravscale |
| | | | 2 | Dither 6 x 6 | 142 | Good grayscale |
| | | | 3 | Dither 4 x 4 | 212 | Good resolution |
| | 3* | Density Setting for Low Density Original Mode | Selects original [0~1 / 0 0: Sele 1: Digit Use to a images, in hand written f when co | the density γ fa mode. / 1] cts γ normal de izes to near bin achieve better correct shado written docume in pencil, or to opying blueprin | actor for t ensity. nary imag balance t bws that a ents, to en achieve s ats, buildi | the low-density between text and ppear around text nhance documents stark contrast ng plans, etc. |
| | 4* | Density Setting for Copied Original Mode | Setting [0~1 / 0 | same as above /1 step] | е. | |

| SP4 | Mod | e Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-----|--|--|
| 4904* | 5* | Special Text Density | Enter the appropriate number with the 10-key pad then press (#). This SP code adjusts the density of the image to eliminate vertical black lines in originals that were caused by previous scanning with a dirty optics. While selecting a higher setting to erase more lines, selecting a very high setting can cause low contrast areas to become faint or cause them to drop out. [0~7 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Weaker 7: Stronger (~6.2 Image Processing) |
| | 7* | Error Diffusion Pattern | Adjusts the threshold level for error diffusion processing in the Text/Photo mode. The effect of error diffusion can vary, depending on the image of the original. Adjust this setting if the results of the texture in copies is not what you expect, especially before starting a large copy job. [0~3 / 0 / 1 step] 0:Edge threshold pattern is used. 1:Texture Pattern (matrix) 0 is used 2:Texture Pattern (matrix) 1 used. 3:Texture Pattern 2 (matrix) used. |
| | 8* | Gray Adj: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25-64% | Adjusts the degree of edge detection to improve image quality originals scanned in the Text/Photo Mode in a range of magnification of 25% to 64%. The method of error diffusion is determined how the edges are detected. At defined edges error diffusion executes on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, error diffusion executes grayscale processing for photographs. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. [0~15 / 7 / 1] 0: Decreasing the setting (approaching "0") improves the appearance of photographs, but can cause text and thin lines to drop out. 15: Increasing the setting (approaching "15") sharpens text and thin lines, but can also cause grayscale areas to degrade. (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) |

| SP4 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | | |
|-------|-------------|---|--|--|--|
| 4904* | 9* | Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154% | Adjusts the setting for edge detection during grayscale processing of originals scanned with the Custom Setting of the Text/Photo mode at 65%-154% magnification. At defined edges error diffusion executes on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, error diffusion executes grayscale processing for photographs. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. 0: Decreasing the setting (approaching "0") improves the appearance of photographs, but can cause text and thin lines to drop out. 15: Increasing the setting (approaching "15") sharpens text and thin lines, but can also cause grayscale areas to degrade. (~6.2 Image Processing) | | |
| | 10* | Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155-256% | Adjusts the setting for edge detection during grayscale processing of originals scanned with the Custom Setting of the Text/Photo mode at 155%-256% magnification. At defined edges error diffusion executes on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, error diffusion executes grayscale processing for photographs. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. [0~15 / 7 / 1] 0: Decreasing the setting (approaching "0") improves the appearance of photographs, but can cause text and thin lines to drop out. 15: Increasing the setting (approaching "15") sharpens text and thin lines, but can also cause grayscale areas to degrade. | | |
| | 11* | Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257-400% | (••• 0.2 Image Processing) Adjusts the setting for edge detection during grayscale processing of originals scanned with the Custom Setting of the Text/Photo mode at 257%-400% magnification. At defined edges error diffusion executes on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, error diffusion executes grayscale processing for photographs. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. [0~15 / 7 / 1] 0: Decreasing the setting (approaching "0") improves the appearance of photographs, but can cause text and thin lines to drop out. 15: Increasing the setting (approaching "15") sharpens text and thin lines, but can also cause grayscale areas to degrade. (••6.2 Image Processing) | | |

| SP4 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | | |
|-------|-------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|--|
| 4904* | 13* | Gray Adj.: Photo (Edge Det.) | Adjusts the setting for edge detection during grayscale processing of originals scanned with the Custom Setting of the Photo mode. At defined edges error diffusion executes on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, error diffusion executes grayscale processing for photographs. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. [0~15 / 0 / 1] 0: Decreasing the setting (approaching "0") improves the appearance of photographs, but can cause text and thin lines to drop out. 15: Increasing the setting (approaching "15") sharpens text and thin lines, but can also cause grayscale areas to degrade. (<i>œ</i>6.2 Image Processing) | | |
| | 20* | Text (General) Quality 25- 64% | Allows adjustment together with other SP codes to improve image quality of originals copied in Text Mode at magnification within 25%-64%. The selections are stepped to allow gradual adjustments from prioritizing reproduction of pictures shaded with dot patterns (newspapers, magazines, etc.) with less moiré to prioritizing low contrast fine lines and text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. [0~13 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 13: Text/thin lines highest priority (€6.2 Image Processing) | | |
| | 21 | Text (General) Quality 65-154% | (Image Processing) Allows adjustment together with other SP codes to improve image quality of originals copied in Text Mode at magnification within 65%-154%. The selections are stepped to allow gradual adjustments from prioritizing reproduction of pictures shaded with dot patterns (newspapers, magazines, etc.) with less moiré to prioritizing low contrast fine lines and text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. [0~13 / 0 / 1] Off Pictures highest priority Text/thin lines highest priority Text/thin lines highest priority | | |

| SP4 | Mod | e Number | Function and [Setting] | | |
|-------|-----|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| 4904* | 22 | Text (General) Quality 155- 256% | Allows adjustment together with other SP codes to improve image quality of originals copied in Text Mode at magnification within 155%-256%. The selections are stepped to allow gradual adjustments from prioritizing reproduction of pictures shaded with dot patterns (newspapers, magazines, etc.) with less moiré to prioritizing low contrast fine lines and text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. [0~13 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 13: Text/thin lines highest priority (• 6.2 Image Processing) | | |
| | 23 | Text (General) Quality 25- 64% | Allows adjustment together with other SP codes to improve image quality of originals copied in Text Mode at magnification within 255%-400%. The selections are stepped to allow gradual adjustments from prioritizing reproduction of pictures shaded with dot patterns (newspapers, magazines, etc.) with less moiré to prioritizing low contrast fine lines and text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. [0~10 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 10: Text/thin lines highest priority (• 6.2 Image Processing) | | |
| | 24 | Photo (General) Quality | Allows overall adjustment of photo images in originals scanned in the Photo mode. These selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. [0~10 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 10: Text highest priority (<i>~6.2 Image Processing</i>) | | |

| SP4 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | |
|-------|-------------|--|--|--|
| 4904* | 25 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 25-64% | Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve quality of images scanned in the Text/Photo mode and magnified in the range 25%~64%. These selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. [0~10 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 10: Text highest priority (<i>c</i> .2 Image Processing) | |
| | 26 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 65- 154% | Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve quality of images scanned in the Text/Photo mode and magnified in the range 65%~154%. These selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. [0~10 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 10: Text highest priority (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) | |
| | 27 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 155-256% | Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve quality of images scanned in the Text/Photo mode and magnified in the range 155%~256%. These selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. [0~10 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 10: Text highest priority (<i>•</i> 6.2 Image Processing) | |

| SP4 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | | |
|-------|--------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 4904* | 28 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 257-400% | Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve quality of images scanned in the Text/Photo mode and magnified in the range 155%~256%. These selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of sharp text. [0~10 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 10: Text highest priority (<i>~6.2 Image Processing</i>) | | |
| | 29 | Pale (General) Quality | Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve the overall quality of images scanned in Pale Mode. The selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing fine lines and text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. [0~13 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 13: Text/thin lines highest priority (=6.2 Image Processing) | | |
| | 30 | Generation (General) Quality | Allows adjustment with other SP codes to improve the overall quality of images in originals scanned in Generation Copy mode. The selections are stepped to allow adjustment in gradual stages from prioritizing reproduction of pictures with less moiré to prioritizing reproduction of fine lines and low density text. Select a lower setting to prioritize reproduction of pictures without moiré, and select a higher setting to prioritize reproduction of text and thin lines. [0~13 / 0 / 1] 0: Off 1: Pictures highest priority 13: Text/thin lines highest priority (<i>c</i> .2 Image Processing) | | |
| 4905 | Imag 1 * | je Data Path Filter Mag. Path Switch | Allows switching between filter and magnification processing of the image for testing. DFU [0~3 / 0 / 1] 0: Uses settings of each application and mode 1: Through filter 2: Through magnification 3: Through filter, magnification | | |

| SP4 | Мо | de Number | Function and [Setting] |
|------|------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 4905 | 4* | Printout Type Selection | Allows switching of the printout for testing. DFU [0~1 / 0 / 1] 0: Uses settings of each application, mode 1: Reverses image logic (normally inverse black/white). |
| 4909 | Ima | ge Data Path | |
| | 1* | Image Quality Through Processing | Selects the method for image quality through processing. DFU [0~3 / 0 / 1] 0: Normal operation 1: Grayscale through processing 2: Gamma correction through processing 3: Printer gamma, grayscale through processing |
| | 20 * | Image Data Path – Printer | Forces switching of the data output format between writing for the Ri10, CDIA for testing. DFU [0~3 / 0 / 1] 0: Normal operation 1: Sets output from the Ri10 to the CDICA for grayscale output (1 pixel/8 bits) 2: Sets output from the Ri10 to the write unit for grayscale output (4 pixles/8 bits) 3: Sets output from the Ri10 to the CDICA for grayscale output (1 pixel/8 bits) 3: Sets output from the Ri10 to the CDICA for grayscale output (1 pixel/8 bits), also sets output from the Ri10 to the write unit for grayscale output (4 pixels/8 bits), also sets output from the Ri10 to the write unit for grayscale output (4 pixels/8 bits) |

SP5-xxx: Mode

| | SP5 | Mode | Number | Fun | ction and [Setting] |
|---|-------|---------|------------------------|-------|--|
| | 5024* | mm/ind | ch Display Selection | Sele | ects the unit of measurement. |
| | | | | Afte | r selection, turn the main power switch off and |
| | | | | on. | |
| | | | | 0: E | urope/Asia 1: North America |
| | 5044 | 0 | | 0: m | m, 1: Inch |
| | 5044 | Operat | ion Panel Bit Sw | DFU | |
| Ξ | 5104* | A3/DL | I Double Count | Spe | cifies whether the counter is doubled for |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | 1. Y | |
| | | | | 2. C | ounts once for A4 SEE fed from bypass trav |
| | | | | If (1 |) is selected, the total counter and the current |
| | | | | user | code counter count up twice when A3 or DLT |
| | | | | pape | er is used. |
| | 5106* | 6* | ADS Level Selection | Sele | ects the image density level used in ADS |
| | | | | mod | e. |
| | | | | [1~7 | 7 / 4 / 1 notch per step] |
| | | | | Exa | mple: If you set SP5-106-6 to "2": Pressing the |
| | | | | and | manual notch 2 is selected |
| | | | | Adiu | ist this SP if the customer cannot attain clean |
| | | | | copi | es after performing automatic density |
| | | | | adju | stment. |
| | 5112* | Non-S | andard Paper Selection | Dete | ermines whether a non-standard paper size |
| | | | | can | be initialized for copying or not. |
| | | | | 0:N | 0, 1: Yes |
| | | | | | is selected, a non-standard size can be input |
| | 5113* | Ontion | al Counter Type | Sele | ects the corresponding key for installed |
| | 0110 | opion | | devi | ces such as a coin lock. Japan only |
| | | | | [0~5 | 5 / 0 / 1 step] |
| | | | | 0 | None. |
| | | | | 1 | Key card (RK3, RK4) |
| | | | | 2 | Key card (subtraction count setting) |
| | | | | 3 | Pre-paid card |
| | | | | 4 | Coin lock |
| | | | | 5 | MF key card (Peace) Japan only |
| | | | | 11 | MF key card (Increment) |
| | E440+ | Disabl | 0 | 12 | MF key card (Decrement) |
| | 5118* | Disable | | DFU | |
| | 5120* | Romo | clear Opt. Counter | Clea | ars all coin devices. Japan only |
| | | Remov | al di | [U~2 | lormal reset |
| | | | | | esets only when job finished or before job |
| | | | | b | egins. |
| | | | | 2: N | lot normal reset. |
| | 5121* | Counte | er Up Timing | Dete | ermines whether the optional key counter |
| | | | - | cour | nts up at paper feed or at paper exit. |
| | | | | 0: F | eed, 1: Exit |
| | | | | The | total counter is not affected by this SP mode. |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|---------|----------------------------|---|
| 5127* | APS N | lode | Selects whether the APS function is enabled or |
| | | | disabled with the contact of a pre-paid card or |
| | | | 0: Enabled 1: Disabled |
| 5131* | Paper | Size Type Selection | Selects the paper size (type) for both originals and |
| 0101 | i upoi | | copy paper. |
| | | | [0~2 / DIP SW setting / 1 step] |
| | | | 0: Japan |
| | | | 1: North America |
| | | | 2: Europe |
| | | | After changing the setting, turn the copier off and |
| | | | on. If the paper size of the archive files stored on |
| | | | the HDD is different, abnormal copies could result. |
| 5150* | By-Pas | ss Wide Paper Mode | Determines whether the transfer sheet from the |
| | | | by-pass tray is used or not. |
| | | | 0 : Off, 1: On |
| | | | Normally the paper length for sub scanning paper |
| | | | from the by-pass tray is limited to 600 mm, but this can be extended with this SP to 1260 mm |
| 5162 | Applies | ation Switching Method | Determines whether the application screep is |
| 5102 | | ation Switching Method | switched with a hardware switch or software switch. |
| | | | [0~1/0/1] |
| 5212* | Page S | Stamp | |
| | 3* | Duplex Printout Right/Left | Determines how horizontal printing is executed |
| | | Position | during duplex printing. Sets the upper right corner |
| | | | of the front side and the upper left corner of the |
| | | | printing are the same on both sides DEU |
| | | | $[-10 \rightarrow +10 / 0 / 1 \text{ mm sten}]$ |
| | | | -10° Extreme right |
| | | | +10: Extreme left |
| | 4* | Duplex Printout High/Low | Determines how vertical printing is executed |
| | | Position | during duplex printing. Sets the upper right corner |
| | | | of the front side and the upper left corner of the |
| | | | backside so the starting points for vertical printing |
| | | | are the same of both sides. DFU $\begin{bmatrix} 10_{-+10} / 0 / 1 \text{ mm step} \end{bmatrix}$ |
| | | | -10° Extreme top |
| | | | +10. Extreme bottom |
| 5302* | 2* | Set Time | Adjusts the RTC time setting for the local time |
| | | | zone. |
| | | | [–1440~+1440 / 1 min. step] |
| | | | Example: For Japan (+9 GMT), enter 540 (9 hours |
| | | | x 60 min.) |
| 5501* | 1* | PM Alarm Interval | Sets the PM alarm interval. |
| | | | [υ~ээээ / υ / 1 step] 0: Alorm off |
| | | | U. Aldilli Uli |
| | | | 1^{-9999} . Ald III you Uli Wile II |
| | 1 | | $value(1~9999) \ge rivi coullel$ |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | | |
|-------|-------------|----------------------|---|--|--|
| 5501* | 2* | Original Count Alarm | Sets the alarm to sound after the specified total number of originals goes through the ARDF. 0: Disabled , 1: Enabled 0: No alarm sounds 1: Alarm sounds after the number of originals passing through the ARDE > 10,000 | | |
| 5504* | Jam A | larm | Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document mis-feeds are not included). DFU [0~3 / 3 / 1 step] 0: Zero (Off) 1: Low (1.5K jams) 2: Medium (3K jams) 3: High (6K jams) | | |
| 5505* | Error A | Narm | Sets the error alarm level. Japan only | | |
| 5507* | 1* | Paper Supply Alarm | Switches the control call on/off for the paper supply. DFU 0: Off, 1: On 0: No alarm. 1: Sets the alarm to sound for the specified number transfer sheets for each paper size (A3, A4, B4, B5, DLT, LG, LT, HLT) | | |
| | 2* | Staple Supply Alarm | Switches the control call on/off for the stapler installed in the finisher. Japan only 0: Off, 1: On 0: No alarm 1: Alarm goes off for every 1K of staples used. | | |
| | 3* | Toner Supply Alarm | Switches the control call on/off for the toner end. DFU 0: Off , 1: On If you select "1" the alarm will sound when the copier detects toner end. | | |
| | 128* | Others | The "Paper Supply Call Level: nn" SPs specify the | | |
| | 132* | A3 | paper control call interval for the referenced paper | | |
| | 133* | A4 | sizes. DFU | | |
| | 134* | A5 | [00250 ~ 10000 / 1000 / 1 Step] | | |
| | 141* | B4 | | | |
| | 142* | B5 | | | |
| | 160* | DLT | | | |
| | 164* | LG | | | |
| | 166* | LT | | | |
| | 172* | HLT | | | |
| 5508 | CC Ca | | | | |
| | 1* | Jam Remains | Enables/disables initiating a call for an unattended paper jam. [0~1/1/1] 0: Disable 1: Enable | | |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-------------|---------------------------|---|
| 5508 | 2* | Continuous Jam | Enables/disables initiating a call for consecutive |
| | | Occurrence | paper jams. |
| | | | [0~1/ 1 /1] |
| | | | 0: Disable |
| | | | 1: Enable |
| | 3* | Continuous Door Open | Enables/disables initiating a call when the front |
| | | | door remains open. |
| | | | [0~1/ 1 /1] |
| | | | 0: Disable |
| | | | 1: Enable |
| | 4* | Low Call Mode | Enables/disables the new call specifications |
| | | | designed to reduce the number of calls. |
| | | | [0~1/ 1 /1] |
| | | | 0: Normal mode |
| | | | 1: Reduced mode |
| | 11* | Jam Detection: Time | Sets the length of time a jam must remain before it |
| | | Length | becomes an 'unattended paper jam'. |
| | | | $[03 \sim 30/10/1]$ |
| | | | I his setting is enabled only when SP5508 004 is |
| | 10* | Iom Dotestion: Continuous | Cate the number of consecutive nener ions |
| | 12" | Jam Delection: Continuous | Sets the number of consecutive paper jams |
| | | Count | $102 \sim 10/5/11$ |
| | | | This setting is enabled only when SP5508 004 is |
| | | | enabled (set to 1). |
| | 13* | Door Open: Time Length | Sets the length of time the door remains open |
| | - | | before the machine initiates a call. |
| | | | [03~30/ 10 /1] |
| | | | This setting is enabled only when SP5508 004 is |
| | | | enabled (set to 1). |
| | 21* | Jam Operation: Time | Determines what happens when a paper jam is left |
| | | Length | unattended. |
| | | | [0~1/ 1 /1] |
| | | | 0: Automatic Call |
| | | | 1: Audible Warning at Machine |
| | 22* | Jam Operation: Continuous | Determines what happens when consecutive paper |
| | | Count | jams occur. |
| | | | [0~1/ 1 /1] |
| | | | |
| | 0.0* | | 1: Audible Warning at Machine |
| | 23^ | Door Operation: Time | Determines what happens if the door remains open |
| | | Length | (15 mm).). [0-:1 / 1 / 1] |
| | | | |
| | | | U. UFF 1: ON Displays a warning Proceing the cell button |
| | | | will contact the service center |
| | | | This setting is available for setting only if SP5508 |
| | | | 004 is set for 1. |
| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|----------------------------|--|---|
| 5801* | Memory Clear | | Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their default values. (|
| 5802* | Printer Free Run | | Performs a free run. The scanner scans once and the printer prints for the number of copies requested. To perform the free run, after selecting "1", press the Copy Window to enter copy mode, input the number of copies, and then press the Start key. To stop the free run, press [2/19]. 0: Off , 1: On |
| 5803 | Input C | Check | Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. (5.1.4) |
| 5804 | Output | t Check | Turns on the electrical components individually for test purposes. (r 5.1.5) |
| 5807 | Option 1 2 3 4 | Connection Check ARDF Bank (Paper Tray Unit) LCT Finisher (1000-sheet, | Checks the connectors to the optional peripheral devices. Execution will return either a "1" or "0": 0: Device not connected correctly. 1: Device connected correctly. |
| 5811* | 1* | Machine Serial Number | Use to input the machine serial number. This is normally done at the factory. If you want to know the serial number, print the system parameter list. Press (**) and then input "A". |
| 5812* | Service Tel. No. Setting | | |
| | 1* | Service Tel. Number | Use this to input the telephone number of the service representative. Enter the number and press #. This number is displayed when a service call condition occurs. Press the (*) key to input a pause. Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number. |
| | 2* | SMC Report Transfer Fax. No. | Use this to input the fax number of the service representative. Enter the number and press #. This number is printed on the Counter Report (UP: System No. 19) Press the <i>rest key to input a pause. Press the</i> <i>Clear modes" key to delete the telephone</i> <i>number.</i> |
| | 3* | Supply | Use this to input the telephone number of your supplier for consumables. Enter the number and press #. Press the ^(**) key to input a pause. Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number. |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 5812* | 4* | Operation | Use this to input the service telephone. Enter the number and press #. Press the (*) key to input a pause. Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number. |
| 5816* | 1 | CSS Function On/Off | Japan Only 0: Off 1: On |
| | 2 | CE Call | Japan Only |
| | _ | | 0: Start, 1: Finish |
| 5821* | CSS P | I Device Code | Selects the PI device code. DFU |
| | | | [0~4 / 0 / 1 step] |
| 5824 | NVRAM Data Upload | | Uploads the UP and SP mode data (except for counters and the serial number) from NVRAM on the control board to a flash memory card. While using this SP mode, always keep the front cover open. This prevents a software module accessing the NVRAM during the upload. |
| 5825 | NVRAI | M Data Download | Downloads the content of a flash memory card to the NVRAM on the control board. |
| 5828* | Netwo | rk Setting | |
| | 12 | Device Name | Displays the device name used by the network in the format RNPxxx up to 48 characters. |
| | 66 | Job Spooling Clear: Start Time | This SP determines whether jobs spooled but not printed when the machine was switched off are printed the next time the machine is switched on. [0~1 /1 /1] 0: Not printed at power on 1: Printed at power on <i>This SP is available only when job spooling is</i> <i>enabled.</i> |
| 5828* | 69 | Job Spooling (Protocol) | Switches job spooling off and on and allows settings for job spooling protocols. [0~1 / 1 / 1] 0: Off 1: On (All Active) Protocols are enabled/disabled with bit switch settings (0 = Off, 0 = On). Bit0: LPR Bit1: FPT Bit2: IPP Bit3: SMB Bit4~Bit7: Reserved |
| | 74* | Delete Password | Execute to delete network password. |
| | 84* | Print NCS Parameters | Prints a list of all NCS related parameters. |
| | 90* | Use Telnet | This setting determines whether Telnet is started or not. [0~1 / 1 / 1] <i>If not started, the Telnet port is closed.</i> |
| | 91 | Web Monitor Image | Determines whether Web Image Monitor is enabled or disabled. [0~1 / 1 / 1] 1: Enabled 0: Disabled |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-----------------|---|--|
| 5832 | HDD | | |
| | 1 | HDD Formatting (ALL) | Enter the SP number for the partition to initialize, |
| | 2 | HDD Formatting (IMH) | then press #. When execution ends, cycle the |
| | 3 | HDD Formatting | machine off and on. |
| | | (Thumbnail) | |
| | 4 | HDD Formatting (Job Log) | |
| | 5 | HDD Formatting (Printer | |
| | | Fonts) | |
| | D | HDD Formatting (Address | |
| | 7 | HDD Formatting (Mail RX | |
| | | data) | |
| | 8 | HDD Formatting (Mail TX | |
| | | data) | |
| | 9 | HDD Formatting (Data for a | |
| | | Design) | |
| | 11 | HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F) | |
| 5833 | Job Lo | g Transfer On/Off Setting | Switches the job log transfer on/off for Poplar |
| | | | server. 0. Off (disable) 1: On (enable) |
| 5834 | Enable | Operation Panel Image | Enables and disables the operation panel read |
| | Setting | IS | (dump) feature. After powering on the machine, |
| | - | | set this option to 1 to enable this feature. |
| | l | | 0 : Off (disable), 1: On (enable) |
| | | | To reset the machine to 0, the machine must be |
| | l | | turned off and on again. Selecting U for this option |
| | | | restore the default setting (0) |
| | | | |
| 5836 | Capture Setting | | |
| | 1* | Capture Function (0:Off | With this function disabled, the settings related to |
| | | 1:On) | the capture feature cannot be initialized, displayed, |
| | | | or selected. |
| | | | $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \sim 1/0/1 \end{bmatrix}$ |
| | | | |
| | 2* | Panel Setting | Determines whether each capture related setting |
| | - | | can be selected or updated from the initial system |
| | | | screen. |
| | | | [0~1/0/1] |
| | | | 0: Disable |
| | | | 1: Enable |
| | 0.1* | File Operation (Operations (Operations) | The setting for SP5836 001 has priority. |
| | 61^ | File Send After Capture (0: | In order to reduce the load on the network, only the captured document is sent (0), or the network |
| | | NO 1.123) | accurately maintains the captured document for re- |
| | | | sending. |
| | | | [0~1/ 1 /1] |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | 1 | | |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|------|------|---------------------------------|--|
| 5836 | 71* | Reduction for Copy Color | Sets the default reduction for stored copy color documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~2 / 2 / 1] 0: 1-to-1 1: 1/2 2: 1/4 <i>Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.</i> |
| | 72* | Reduction for Copy B&W Text | Sets the default reduction for stored black and white text documents sent the document management server via the MLB. [0~2 / 2 / 1] 0: 1-to-1 1: 1/2 2: 1/4 <i>Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.</i> |
| | 73* | Reduction for Copy B&W Other | Sets the default reduction for stored documents other than black and white sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~2 / 2 / 1] 0: 1-to-1 1: 1/2 2: 1/4 Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed. |
| | 74* | Reduction for Printer Color | Sets the default reduction for stored print color documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~2 / 2 / 1] 0: 1-to-1 1: 1/2 2: 1/4 <i>Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.</i> |
| | 75* | Reduction for Printer B&W | Sets the default reduction for stored printer black and white documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~2 / 2 / 1] 0: 1-to-1 1: 1/2 2: 1/4 <i>Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.</i> |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-------------|---------------------------------|---|
| 5836 | 76* | Reduction for Printer B&W HQ | Sets the default reduction for stored printer black and white documents sent to the document management server via the MLB with higher quality given priority. [0~3 / 1 / 1] 0: 1-to-1 1: 1/2 2: 1/4 3: 1/8 Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link |
| | 81* | Format for Copy Color | Sets the default format for stored copy color documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~3 / 0 / 1] 0: JFIF/JPEG 1: TIFF/MMR 2: TIFF/MMR 3: TIFF/MR Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed. |
| | 82* | Format for Copy B&W Text | Sets the default format for stored copy black and white text documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~3 / 1 / 1] 0: JFIF/JPEG 1: TIFF/MR 2: TIFF/MH 3: TIFF/MR Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed. |
| | 83* | Format Copy B&W Other | Sets the default format for stored other than black and white documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~3 / 1 / 1] 0: JFIF/JPEG 1: TIFF/MR 2: TIFF/MR 2: TIFF/MR <i>Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is</i> installed. |
| | 84* | Format for Printer Color | Sets the default format for stored printer color documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. [0~3 / 0 / 1] 0: JFIF/JPEG 1: TIFF/MMR 2: TIFF/MH 3: TIFF/MR <i>Enabled only when</i> optional <i>MLB (Media Link</i> <i>Board) is installed</i> |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|------|--------|---------------------------|---|
| 5836 | 85* | Format for Printer B&W | Sets the default format for stored printer black and |
| | | | white documents sent to the document |
| | | | management server via the MLB. |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | 5. The mix |
| | | | Board) is installed. |
| | 86* | Format for Printer B&W HQ | Sets the default format for stored copy black and |
| | | | white text documents sent to the document |
| | | | management server via the MLB with quality given |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | 1: TIFF/MMR |
| | | | 2: TIFF/MH |
| | | | 3: TIFF/MR |
| | | | Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link |
| | | | Board) is installed. |
| | 91* | Default for JPEG | Sets the JPEG format default for documents sent to |
| | | | the document management server via the MLB with |
| | | | JPEG selected as the format. $[5-05/50]/50$ |
| | | | Enabled only when ontional MLB (Media Link |
| | | | Board) is installed. |
| 5839 | IEEE 1 | 394 | |
| | 4 | Host Name | Enter the name of the device used on the network. |
| | | | Example: RNP000000000 |
| | 7* | Cycle Master | Enables or disables the cycle master function for |
| | | | the 1394 bus standard. |
| | | | $[0 \sim 1/1/1]$ |
| | | | |
| | Q* | DCD modo | 1: Enable (UII) Determines how PCP (Broadcast Channel |
| | 0 | BCR mode | Register) operates on the 1394 standard bus when |
| | | | the independent node is in any mode other than |
| | | | IRM. (NVRAM: 2-bits) |
| | | | (Range: Binary settings 0~3) |
| | | | 00: Off. Writes from the IRM. |
| | | | 01: Copies BCR of the IRM after no data is written |
| | | | from the IRM after the prescribed time has |
| | | | 10. Reserved Notused |
| | | | 11 BCR normally enabled. |
| | 9* | IRM 1394a Check | Conducts a 1394a check of IRM when the |
| | _ | | independent node is in any mode other than IRM. |
| | | | 0: Checks whether IRM conforms to 1394a |
| | | | 1: After IRM is checked, if IRM does not conform |
| | | | then independent node switches to IRM. |
| | | | |
| | | 1 | |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-------------|-------------|---|
| 5839 | 10* | Unique ID | Lists the ID (Node_Unique_ID) assigned to the device by the system administrator. [0~1/1/1] 0: Does not list the Node_Unique_ID assigned by the system administrator. Instead, the Source_ID of the GASP header in the ARP is used. 1: The Node_Unique_ID assigned by the system administrator is used, and the Source_ID of the GASP header in the ARP is ignored. Also, when the serial bus is reset, extra bus transactions are |
| | 11* | Logout | opened for the enumeration. Handles the login request of the login initiator for SBP-2. (1-bit) [0~1/1/1] 0: Disable (refuse login) Initiator retry during login Login refusal on arrival of login request (standard operation) 1: Enable (force logout) Initiator retry during login Login refusal on arrival of login request, and the initiator forces the login. |
| | 12* | Login | Enables or disables the exclusive login feature (SBP-2 related). [0~1/1/1] 0: Disables. The exclusive login (LOGIN ORB exClusvie it) is ignored. 1: Enables. Exclusive login is in effect. |
| | 13* | Login MAX | Sets the maximum number of logins from the initiator (6-bits) [0~63/ 8 /1] 0: Reserved 63:Reserved |
| 5840 | IEEE 8 | 02.11b | |
| | 4 | SSID | Enters an unique ID (up to 32 characters long) to identify the device when it is operating in an area with another wireless LAN network. |
| | 6 | Channel MAX | Sets the maximum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the maximum end of the range for each area. Adjust the upper 4 bits to set the maximum number of channels. JA [1~14/ 14 / 1] NA [1~11 / 11 / 1 EU [1~13 / 13 / 1] China, Taiwan (Same as NA) <i>Displayed only when the option 802.11b for</i> <i>wireless LAN is installed.</i> |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 5840 | 7 | Channel MIN | [Sets the minimum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the minimum end of the range for each area. Adjust the lower 4 bits to set the minimum number of channels. JA $[1\sim14/1/1]$ NA $[1\sim11/1/1]$ NA $[1\sim11/1/1]$ EU $[1\sim13/1/1]$ China, Taiwan (Same as NA) <i>Displayed only when the option 802.11b for</i> <i>wireless LAN is installed.</i> |
| | 11 | WEP Key Select | Selects the WEP key. [00~11 / 00 / 1 binary] 00: Key #1 01: Key #2 (Reserved) 10: Key #3 (Reserved) 11: Key #4 (Reserved) |
| | 20 | WEP Mode | Determines the operation mode of the WEP key. [0~1/ 0 /1] 0: Max. 64-bit (10 characters) 1: Max. 128-bit (10, 26 characters) <i>Displayed only when the option 801.11b for</i> <i>wireless LAN is installed.</i> |
| 5841 | Supply Name Setting | | Allows setting the following items with the Soft Keyboard after pressing the "Soft Keyboard" button displayed for this SP code. The items you enter are displayed after pressing "User Tools" and then pressing the "Inquiry" button on the touch-panel display. |
| | 1 | Toner Name Setting: Black | Enter the name of the toner in use. |
| | 5 | Staple Standard | Enter the name of the staples in use for normal stapling (not booklet stapling) |
| | 6 | Staple Bind | Enter the name of the staples in use for booklet stapling. |
| | 7 | Original Stamp | Enter the names of original stamps. |
| 5842 | 1 | Net File Analysis Mode Setting | Selects each debug output mode for NetFile processing [8 bits / 0011 1111 / Bit SW] Bit 8 is reserved. Bit 7 is the debug output switch for each mode. Net files are jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software |
| 5844 | USB | | |
| | 1 | Transfer Rate | Sets the speed for USB data transmission. [0x01~0x04 / 0x04 / 0] 0x01: Full Speed (12 Mbps fixed) 0x04: High Speed/Full Speed (480 Mbps/12 Mbps auto adjust) |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-------------|---|--|
| 5844 | 2 | Vendor ID | Sets the vendor ID: Initial Setting: 0x05A Ricoh Company. DFU [0x0000~0xFFFF/ 0x05CA /1] |
| | 3 | Product ID | Sets the product ID. DFU [0x0000~0xFFFF/0x0403/1] |
| | 4 | Device Release Number | Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display. [0000~9999/0100/1] DFU |
| | | | number to hexadecimal number recognized as the BCD. |
| 5845 | Deliver | y Server Setting | Provides items for delivery server settings. |
| | 1 | FTP Port No. | Sets the FTP port number used when image files to the Scan Router Server. [0~65535 / 3670 / 1] |
| | 2 | IP Address | Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be referenced by the initial system setting. [0~0xFFFFFFFF / 0x00] |
| | 3 | Retry Interval | Determines the time interval between retries before the machine returns to standby after an error occurs during an image transfer with the delivery scanner or SMTP server. [60~900 / 300 / 1] |
| | 4 | Number oF Retries | Determines the number of retries before the machine returns to standby after an error occurs during an image transfer with the delivery or SMTP server. [0~99 / 3 / 1] |
| | 5* | Capture Server IP Address | Sets the capture server IP address for the capture function. (eCabinet UC1). [0~0xFFFFFFF / 0x00 /] MLB2 is required to use this feature. |
| | 6* | Delivery Error Display Time Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software | Use this setting to determine the length of time the prompt message is displayed when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device. [0~999 / 300 / 1] |
| | 7* | Delivery Options | Connects to the Scan Router server for delivery of scanned documents. [0~1 / 0 / 1] 0: No connection to Scan Router delivery server 1: Connected to Scan Router server for delivery of scanned documents. |
| 5846 | UCS S | ettings | |
| | 1 | Machine ID (For Delivery Server) | Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is only displayed and cannot be changed. This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI. The ID is displayed as either 6-byle or 8-byte binary. |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-------------|---|---|
| 5846 | 2 | Machine IC Clear (For Delivery Server) | Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on. |
| | 3 | Maximum Entries | Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. [2000~50000/2000/1] If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed. |
| | 4 | Delivery Server Model | Changes the model of the transfer server registered for the I/O device. [0~4/ 0 /1] 0: Not used 1: SG1 Provided 2: SG1 Package 3: SG2 Provided 4: SG2 Package |
| | 5 | Delivery Server Capability | Changes the capability of the server registered for the I/O device. Bit 7 = 1 Comment information Bit 6 = 1 Address direct entry possible Bit 5 = 1 Mail Rx confirmation possible Bit 4 = 1 Address book auto update Bit 3 = 1 Fax Rx function $I0\sim255/0/21$ |
| | 6 | Delivery Server Retry Timer | Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book. [0~255/ 0 /1] |
| | 7 | Delivery Server Retry Times | Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book. [0~255/ 0 /1] |
| | 8 | Delivery Server Maximum Entries | Sets the maximum number account entries of the delivery server user information managed by UCS. [2000~50000 / 2000 / 1] |
| | 50 | Initialize All Directory Info. | Clears all directory information managed by UCS, including all user codes. |
| | 51 | All Directory Info. Upload | Uploads all directory information to the IC card. |
| | 52 | All Directory Info. Download | Downloads all directory information from the IC card. |
| | 80 | FCU Backup | Backs up all directory information on the HDD to the FCU ROM. |
| | 99 | Bit Switches | Sets UCS debug output. DFU |
| 5847 | Net File | e Mag. Rate | |
| | 1 | Copy: Color | Changes the default settings of image data |
| | 2 | Copy : B&W Text | transterred externally by the Net File page |
| | 3 | Copy: Other Than B&W | 10~2 / 2 / 11 |
| | 4 | Printer: Color | 0: 1x |
| | 5 | Printer: B&W Binary | |

| Ī | SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|---|------|----------|--|---|
| | 5847 | 6 | Printer: B&W Dither | 1: ½x ½x "Net files" are jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software. |
| | | 21 | NetFile Default for JPEG | Sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files handled by NetFile. <i>Currently not used</i> . [5~95 / 50 / 1] "Net files" are jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software. |
| | 5848 | Web Se | ervice | |
| | | 1 | Network Quality DeFault For JPEG | [5~95 / 50 / 1] Currently not used. |
| | | 2 | Access Control: Repository (Lower 4 Bits) | Sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. <i>Currently not used</i> . 0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to Desk Top Binder. Has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. |
| | | 3 | Doc. Svr. Print (Lower 4 Bits) | Switches access control on and off. 0000: OFF |
| | | 4 | User Directory (Lower 4 Bits) | Switches access control on and off. 0000: OFF |
| | | 5 | Delivery Input (Lower 4 Bits) | Switches access control on and off. 0000: OFF |
| | | 6 | Access Control: (Lower 4 Bits) | Switches access control on and off. 0000: OFF |
| | | 100 | Repository: Max. Size of Download Image | Sets the maximum size allowed for downloaded images. The default is equal to 1 gigabyte. [1~1024 / 1024 / 1K] |
| | 5849 | Installa | tion Date | Sets the delivery date for the machine. DFU |
| | | 1 | Indication | |
| | | 2 | Switch to Print | |
| | 5852 | SMTP | | Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. The protocol for communication between Internet main MTAs (Message Transfer Agents). |
| | | 2 | Port Number | Sets the port number [0~65535 / 25 / 1] |
| | 5853 | Stamp | Data Download | Use this SP to download the fixed stamp data stored in the firmware the ROM and copy it to the HDD. This SP can be executed as many times as required. This SP must be executed after replacing or formatting the hard disks. <i>This SP can be executed only with the hard disks</i> <i>installed.</i> |
| | 5857 | Debug | Log Save Function | |
| | | 1 | On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF) | Switches the debug log feature on and off. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on. [0 ~ 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON |

| SP5 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-------------|------------------------------|---|
| 5857 | 2 | Target (1:IC Card 2:HDD) | Select "1" (IC Card) if an HDD unit is not installed in |
| | | | the machine, or if the HDD unit is temporarily out of service. The IC card can store only 4 MB so use the |
| | | | HDD selection. |
| | 3 | Initialize IC Card | Initializes the IC card inserted into the controller |
| | | | slot. Initializing erases all data on the IC card. Use |
| | - 1 | Courte IC Court | to initialize a new card. DFU |
| | 4 | Save to IC Card | Saves the debug log in memory to the IC card. DFU |
| | 5 | Save to HDD | A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting |
| | | | existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can |
| | | | be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be |
| | | | copied one by one to each SD Card. |
| | 7 | HDD to IC Card (Latest | Copies the latest 4 MB of the debug log on the |
| | | | from the IC card as it copies. |
| | 8 | HDD to IC Card (Latest | Copies the latest 4 MB of the debug log on the |
| | | 4MB Any Key) | HDD to the IC card, but only those portions of the |
| | | | log specified with a key specified with SP5859 |
| | | | from the IC card as it copies. |
| | | | To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off |
| | | | and on. |
| | 11 | Erase Debug Data From HDD | Erases all debug log data from the IC card. DFU . |
| 5858 | Debug | Log Save Function | These SPs select the content of the debugging |
| | | | information to be saved to the destination selected |
| | 1 | Engine SC Error | by SP3837 002. Stores SC codes generated by conjer engine |
| | 1 | | errors. |
| | 2 | Controller SC Error | Stores SC codes generated by GW controller |
| | | | errors. |
| | 3 | Any SC Error | Stores one SC specified by number. |
| | | | Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes |
| | 4 | Jam | Stores jam errors. |
| 5859 | Debug | Log Save Function | |
| | 1 | Key 1 | These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log |
| | 2 | Key 2 | files for functions that use common memory on the |
| | 3 | Key 3 | controller board. (\bullet 5.3.1) |
| | 4 | Key 4 | [-3333333-333333337071] |
| | 5 | Key 5 | |
| | 6 | Key 6 | 1 |
| | 7 | Key 7 | 1 |
| | 8 | Key 8 | 4 |
| | 9 | Key 9 | 4 |
| | 10 | Key 10 | |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|--|--|--|
| 5907* | Plug & Play | | Sets the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective or has been replaced, these names should be registered again. To set the plug and play model name, enter the model number, and then press (#) |
| 5914* | Applica | ation Counter Display | Selects whether or not the total printer counter is displayed in the UP mode. 0: Off , 1: On |
| 5915 | Mecha | nical Counter Detection | Checks whether the mechanical counter inside the inner cover is connected or not. Display: 0: Not detected 1: Detected 2: Unknown |
| 5918* | A3/DL | T Counter Display | Sets the key press display for the counter key. [0, 1 / 1 /] This setting has no relation to (SSP) SP5-104 A3/DLT Double Count. |
| 5923* | Flame | Elimination Area Change | Toggles between two settings that affect the appearance of the pages for border removal and printed facing pages: (1) Using the original area as the allotted area, or (2) Using only the copy paper as the allotted area. [0, 1/ 0 /] 0: Original area used as base 1: Copy used as the base |
| 5958 | Feed Clutch Start Timing Adjustment | | Adjusts the clutch timing to optimize the intervals between fed sheets to reduce jams in the feed unit DFU |
| | 1* | 1st, 2nd Feed Clutches | [35 ~ 57.5 / 42.5 / 2.5mm] |
| | 2* | 3rd, 4th, LCT Feed Clutches | |
| | 3* | Leading Edge Jam Detection Start Timing | [19~34 / 26.5 /2.5 mm] |
| 5959 | Image | Timing Adj. | Sets the amount of time the machine waits to project the latent image onto the drum after the feed/development motor, main motor, and fusing/feed-out motor switch on. [0~60 / 0 / 1 s] This setting allows the drum and hot roller to turn freely in order to allow more time for cleaning toner and carbon that has accumulated on the hot roller strippers. Changing this can improve image quality but can also slow down the first print time. Adjust only when necessary. Also see SP 3905. |
| 5961* | Large | Capacity Exit Mode | Selects whether or not all stapled copies are sent to Shift Tray 1 when the Two-Tray finisher is installed. [0, 1 / 1] 1: Enabled 0: Disabled |

| SP5 | Mode | Number | Function and [Setting] | |
|-------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|---|---|
| 5962 | 8K 16K Paper Mode | | Switches on/off the use of paper sizes. [0~1 / 0 / 1] Off. 8-kai, 16-kai paper after pressing the selection take effect, "2" must be with "2" (Europe) selected can select 16-kai LEF. We (Off), the nearest size is a below. | of 8-kai, and 16-kai China er sizes are not displayed ection key. er sizes displayed after key. For this setting to re selected for SP5131. Ind for SP5131, the ADF With SP5962 set for "0" detected as shown |
| | | | Size Loaded | Size Detected |
| | | | 16-kai SEF | B5 SEF |
| | | | 16-kai LEF | B5 LEF |
| | | | 8-kai SEF | B4 LEF |
| 5970* | Debug | Serial Output | DFU | |
| 5971 | Opera | tion Panel Coordinate Adj. | Determines whether the f after calibrating the coord screen are calibrated. [0~1 / 0 / 1] 0: Off. No memory clear 1: On. Clears memory. T execution is the same (All). | machine clears memory linates of the touch The memory clear as executing SP5801 1 |
| 5974* | Cherry Server Lite/ Switch to Full | | Switches writing betweer application provided and 0: Lite , 1: Full | the Scan Router lite the optional full version. |
| 5990 | SMC F | Printout | Prints all of the system pa | arameter lists for the item |
| | 1 | All (Data List) | selected. (5.1.6) Input | the number for the item |
| | 2 | SP (Mode Data List) | finat you want to print, an "Execute" on the touch n | a then press (): |
| | 3 | User Program | | |
| | 4 | Logging Data | | |
| | 5 | Diagnostic Report | | |
| | 7 | NIB Summary | | |
| | 8 | Print Net File Log | _ | |
| | 21 | Copier User Program | | |
| | 22 | Scanner SP | | |
| | 23 | Scanner User Program | | |

SP6-xxx: Peripherals

| SP6 | | Mode Number | | Function and [| Setting] |
|-------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 6006* | DF F | Registration Adjustment | Adjusts | the side-to-side and | leading edge |
| | | | registrat | tion for simplex and d | uplex original |
| | 4 4 | | feeding in ARDF mode. Press (*) to toggle ±. | | |
| | 1* | Side-to-side | [-3 ~ +3 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm step] | | |
| | 2* Leading Edge (Thin Original) | | [-30 ~ + | -30 / 0.0 / 0.17 mm st | ep] |
| | 3* | Leading Edge (Duplex Front) | [-42 ~ + | -42 / 0.0 / 0.12 mm st | ep] |
| | 4* | Leading Edge (Duplex Rear) | 0.1.11 | · | |
| | 5 | Rear Edge Erase | Sets the | e maximum setting all | owed for rear edge |
| | | | [-20 ~ + | -20 / 0.0 / 0.5 mm ste | p] |
| 6007 | | ADF Input Check | Displays | s the signals received | from sensors and |
| | 1 | Group 1 | switches | s of the ARDF.(🖝 5. | 1.4) |
| | 2 | Group 2 | | | |
| | 3 | Group 3 | | | |
| 6008 | ADF | Output Check | Switche | s on each electrical c | component (ARDF |
| | | | motor, s 5.1.5) | solenoid, etc.) of the A | ARDF for testing. (|
| 6009 | DF F | ree Run | Perform | s a free run with the | ARDF for duplex and |
| | 1 | Duplex Mode | stamp te | esting. Input the num | ber for the item you |
| | 2 | Stamp Mode | want to | check, and then pres | s 🕛 to start. |
| | | | 1: IO St | art, 0: To cancel | tralled from the |
| | | | Conier F | For more detailed free | a run modes see the |
| | | | ARDF m | nanual. | |
| 6010* | DF Stamp Position Adjustment | | Adjusts the horizontal position of the stamp on the | | |
| | | | scanned | d originals. | |
| | | | [-7~+7] | / 0 / 0.5 mm steps] | |
| 6016* | Origi | nal Size Decision Priority | Determines which original sizes are detected | | |
| | | | size ass | igned to the original | size sensor This |
| | | | provides an alternate selection for detection, other than that assigned with SP5131. | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | [0~1 / 0 | / 1] | |
| | | | Japan | 1 | |
| | | | Bit | 0 | 1 |
| | | | 7 | DLT SEF | 11"x15" |
| | | | North A | merica | |
| | | | Bit | 0 | 1 |
| | | | 6 | | 11" x 15" |
| | | | 5 | | US Exec LEF |
| | | | 4 | | 8"X10" SEF |
| | | | 3 | LG SEF | F4 SEF |
| | | | Europe Bit | 0 | 1 |
| | | | 2 | | |
| | | | 1 | | |
| | | | 0 | | |
| | | | 0 | | IU-N LEF |

| SP6 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-----------------------------|------------------------|---|
| 6017* | Sheet Through Magnification | | Adjusts the magnification in the sub-scan direction for ADF mode. [-50.0 ~ +50.0 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step] |
| | | | Use the (**) key to toggle between + and - before entering the value |
| 6105* | Stap | le Position Adjustment | Adjusts the staple position in the main scan direction when using the two-tray finisher. [-3.5 + 3.5 / 0.0 / 0.5 mm step] Press \textcircled{P} to toggle \pm . A larger value shifts the staple toward the edge of the paper. |
| 6113* | Punch Hole Adjustment | | Adjusts the punch hole position. [–7∼+7 / 0 / 0.5 mm steps] Press ^(→) to toggle ±. A larger value shifts the holes toward the edge of the paper. |
| | 1* | 2-Holes | 2-hole punches for Japan, North America, Europe, and 4-hole punches for Northern Europe. |
| | 2* | 3-Holes | 3-hole punches for North America, and 4-hole punches for Europe. |
| 6902* | Fold Position Adjustment | | Allows fine adjustment of the fold position on paper when the Booklet Finisher is connected and used. |
| | 1* | A3/DLT | [-30~+30 / 0 / 0.5 mm] |
| | 2* | B4 | [-20~+20 / 0 / 0.5 mm] |
| | 3* | A4/LT | [-15~+15 / 0 / 0.5 mm] |

SP7-xxx: Data Log

| SP7 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|---------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| 7001* | Main Motor Operation Time | | The number of prints and drive time for drum revolutions can be obtained by counting the main motor revolution time. If the amount of time required for the drum to revolve to print 1 copy increases, this data combined with the number of copies can be used to analyze problems and could be useful for future product development. Display: 0000000~99999999 min. |
| 7002* | Origina | al Counter | Select a number to display the total original |
| | 1* | Total Counter | count (number of originals fed) for the selected |
| | 2* | Copier | |
| | 3* | Fax | |
| | 4* | Document Box | |
| | 5* | Scanner | |
| | 6* | Others | |
| 7003* | Print C | Counter | Select a number to display the total print count |
| | 1* | Total Counter | for the selected item. |
| | 2* | Copier | |
| | 3* | Fax | |
| | 4* | Printer | |
| 7000* | 5* | Others | |
| 7006* | C/O, F | 7/O Counter | Displays the number of copies per original when |
| | 1^ | C/O (Copies/Original) | For example, if you make 15 copies of a 3 page |
| | 2" | P/O (Prints/Original) | original document, for a total of 45 sheets, then the counter would be 15 (5 copies counted from 11 to 15×3 originals). No count will be returned for $1 \sim 10$ copies of an original. |
| 7007* | Other | Counters | Displays the count total for the selected item. |
| | 1* | Duplex Counter | |
| | 2* | A3/DLT Counter | |
| | 3* | Staple Counter | |
| | 4* | Scan Counter | |
| 7101* | Copy (| Counter: Paper Size | Displays the total number of prints by paper size. |
| | 5* | A4 LEF | |
| | 6* | A5 LEF | |
| | 14* | B5 LEF | |
| | 38* | LT LEF | |
| | 44* | HLT LEF | |
| | 132* | A3 SEF | |
| | 133* | A4 SEF | |
| | 134* | A5 SEF | |
| | 141* | B4 SEF | |
| | 142* | B5 SEF | |
| | 160* | DLT SEF | |
| | 164* | LG SEF | _ |
| | 166* | LT SEF | |
| | 172* | HLT SEF | |

SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES

| SP7 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 7101* | 255* | Others | |
| 7105 | P type | Counter | Displays the count for each type of special |
| | 1 | Normal | paper, up to 99,999,999 |
| | 2 | Recycled | |
| | 3 | Special | |
| | 4 | Colour | |
| | 5 | (Not used) | |
| | 6 | Letterhead | |
| | 7 | Label | |
| | 8 | Thick | |
| | 9 | OHP | |
| | 10 | Used | |
| | 11 | Index | |
| | 255 | Others | |
| 7201* | Total S | Scan Counter | Displays the total number of originals scanned. |
| 7204* | Сору | Counter: Paper Tray | Displays the total number of sheets fed from each paper feed tray. |
| | 1* | Paper Tray 1 | Copier |
| | 2* | Paper Tray 2 | Copier |
| | 3* | Paper Tray 3 | Paper Tray Unit (Option) |
| | 4* | Paper Tray 4 | Paper Tray Unit (Option) |
| | 5* | LCT | Large Capacity Tray (Option) |
| | 6* | By-Pass | Copier |
| 7205* | Total ADF Counter | | Displays the total number of originals fed by the ARDF. |
| 7206* | Staple | Counter | Display the total number of staples fired. |
| | 1* | Normal Staple | |
| | 2* | Booklet Staple | |
| 7209* | Punch | 1 | Displays the total times the punch has fired. |
| 7301* | Copy (| Count: Magnification | Displays the total number of prints by |
| | 1* | Reduce 25%-49% | magnification rate. |
| | 2* | Reduce 50%~99% | |
| | 3* | Full Size | 4 |
| | 4* | Enlarge 101%~200% | 4 |
| | 5* | Enlarge 201%~400% | 4 |
| | 6* | Direct Mag. 2 | 4 |
| | 7* | Direct Size Mag. mm (inch) | |
| | 8* | Auto Reduce/Enlarge | |
| 7304* | Copy (| Counter: Copy Mode | Displays the total number of prints by copy |
| | 1* | Original Mode: Text | operation mode. |
| | 2* | Original Mode: Text/Photo | 4 |
| | 3* | Original Mode: Photo | |
| | 4* | Original Mode: | |
| | 5* | Generation Original Mode: Bale | |
| | 5 6* | | |
| | 7* | Punch | |
| | 1 | Repeat | |

| SP7 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] | |
|-------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| 7304* | 8* | Sort | Displays the total number of prints by copy | |
| | 9* | Staple | operation mode. | |
| | 10* | Series | | |
| | 11* Erase | | | |
| | 12* | Duplex | | |
| | 13* | ADF | | |
| | 14* | Double Copy | | |
| | 15* | Duplex Original | | |
| | 16* | Interrupt Copy | | |
| | 17* | Combine 1 Side | | |
| | 18* | Combine 2 Side | | |
| | 19* | Booklet | | |
| | 20* | Magazine | | |
| | 21* | Batch | - | |
| | 22* | SADF | | |
| | 23* | Mixed Sizes | - | |
| | 24* | Stamp | - | |
| | 25* | Cover Page/Chapter | | |
| | | Page | | |
| | 26* Slip Sheet | | | |
| 7305* | Copy Counter – Set Number | | Displays the total number of prints for multiple | |
| | 1* | 1 to 1 | copy jobs. | |
| | 2* | 1 to 2~5 | | |
| | 3* | 1 to 6~10 | | |
| | 4* | 1 to 11~20 | | |
| | 5* | 1 to 21~50 | | |
| | 6* | 1 to 51~100 | | |
| | 7* | 1 to 101~300 | | |
| | 8* | 1 to 301~ Over | | |
| 7306* | Job C | ounter – Copy Mode | Displays the total number of prints based on the | |
| | 1* | Sort | Job mode. | |
| | 2* | Staple | | |
| | 3* | Punch | | |
| | 4* | Reserve Copy | | |
| | 5* | Check Copy | | |
| 7320* | Docur | nent Server: Scan Storage | Displays the original count stored on the | |
| | 1* | Scanning Count | document server. | |
| 7321* | Document Server: Each Size of | | Displays the number of originals by paper size | |
| | | | | |
| | 4 5* | Α3 Δ/ | - | |
| | 5 6* | A5 | - | |
| | 13* | B4 | | |
| | 14* | B5 | 4 | |
| | 32* | DLT | 4 | |
| | 36* | LG | 4 | |
| | 38* | | 4 | |
| | L | | 4 | |

SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES

| SP7 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------|----------------------------|---|
| 7321* | 128* Others | | Displays the number of originals by paper size |
| | | | scanned at the copy server. |
| 7323* | Docur | nent Server: Each Size of | Displays the number of prints by paper size. |
| | | | - |
| | 5° | A4 LEF | - |
| | 6° | A5 LEF | - |
| | 14" | B5 LEF | - |
| | 38^ | | - |
| | 44" | | - |
| | 128" | | - |
| | 132 | | - |
| | 133" | | - |
| | 134 | | - |
| | 141" | | - |
| | 142^ | | 4 |
| | 100° | | 4 |
| | 164" | | - |
| | 166* | | - |
| 7004* | 172* | | Displays the symbol of isks closed by isk |
| 7324" | Counter | | Displays the number of jobs classed by job |
| | 1* | | content. |
| | 2* | Sort | - |
| | - 3* | Staple | - |
| | 4* | Punch | - |
| | 5* | Check Copy | - |
| | 6* | Print 1st Page | - |
| 7325* | Docur | ment Server: Job Counter – | Displays the number of print jobs classed by size |
| . 020 | Page | Number | of the job. |
| | 1* | 1-page | |
| | 2* | 2-pages | |
| | 3* | 3~5 pages | |
| | 4* | 6~10 pages | - |
| | 5* | over 11 pages | 1 |
| 7326* | Docur | ment Server: Job Counter – | Displays the number of print jobs classed by the |
| | File N | umber | number of files. |
| | 1* | 1 file | |
| | 2* | 2~5 files | |
| | 3* | 6~10 files | |
| | 4* | over 11 files |] |
| 7327* | Docur | ment Server: Job Counter – | Displays the number of print jobs classed by the |
| | Set N | umber | set sizes. |
| | 1* | 1 to 1 | |
| | 2* | 1 to 2~5 | |
| | 3* | 1 to 6~10 | |
| | 4* | 1 to 11~20 | |
| | 5* | 1 to 21~50 | |
| | 6* | 1 to 51~100 | |

| SP7 | Mode Number | | Number | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|----------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|---|
| 7327* | 7* 1 to 101~300 | | 300 | Displays the number of print jobs classed by the |
| | 8* | 1 to 301~ | over | set sizes. |
| 7328* | Document Server: Print Counter – | | | Displays the number of prints by mode. |
| | Print Mode | | | |
| | 6* | Punch | | |
| | 8* Sort | | | |
| | 9* Staple | | | |
| | 12* | Duplex | | |
| | 19* | Booklet | | |
| | 20* | Magazine | | |
| | 24* | Stamp | | |
| | 25* | Cover/Ch | apter Page | |
| | 26* | Slip Shee | t | |
| 7401* | Total | SC Counte | er | Displays the total number of service calls that have occurred. Display range: 0000~9999 |
| 7403* | SC H | listory | | Displays the most recent service calls |
| | 1* | Latest | | successive groups of 10. |
| | 2* | Latest 1 | | |
| | 3* | Latest 2 | | |
| | 4* Latest 3 | | | |
| | 5* Latest 4 | | | |
| | 6* | 6* Latest 5 | | |
| | 7* | Latest 6 | | |
| | 8* | Latest 7 | | |
| | 9* | Latest 8 | | |
| | 10* | Latest 9 | | |
| 7502* | Total | Paper Jan | n Counter | Displays the total number of copy jams. Display range: 0000~9999 |
| 7503* | Total | Original Ja | am Counter | Displays the total number of original jams. |
| | | Ū | | Display range: 0000~9999 |
| 7504* | Pape Loca | r Jam Cou tion | nter by Jam | Displays the total number of copy jams by location. |
| | | | | Display range: 0000~9999 <i>A "Paper Late" error occurs when the paper fails</i> |
| | | | | to activate the sensor at the precise time. A |
| | | | | "Paper Lag" paper jam occurs when the paper |
| | | | | prescribed time. |
| | Paper Late | | Paper Lag Error | Error |
| | | 1* | 110. | At Power On |
| | | 3* | | 1st Paper Feed Sensor |
| | | 4* | | 2nd Paper Feed Sensor |
| | | 5* | | 3rd Paper Feed Sensor |
| | | 6* | | 4th Paper Feed Sensor |
| | | 7* | 57* | LCT Tray Relay Sensor |
| | | 8* | 58* | Transport Sensor 1 |
| | | 9* | 59* | Transport Sensor 2 |
| | | 10* | 60* | Transport Sensor 3 |

| SP7 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------------------------|------------------------|---|
| 7504* | | 61* | Transport Sensor 4 |
| | 13* | 63* | Registration Sensor |
| | 14* | 64* | Fusing Exit Sensor |
| | 16* | 66* | Exit Entrance Sensor |
| | 17* | 67* | Relay Sensor 1 (option) |
| | 18* | 68* | Relay Sensor 2 (option) |
| | 19* | 69* | Duplex Entrance Sensor |
| | 23* | 73* | Duplex Exit Sensor |
| | 24* | 74* | 1-Bin Tray Sensor |
| | 25* | | Finisher Entrance |
| | 26* | | Finisher Proof Tray |
| | 27* | | Finisher Shift Tray |
| | 28* | | Finisher Staple Tray |
| | 29* | | Finisher Tray |
| | 30* | | Mailbox Entrance Sensor |
| | 31* | | Mailbox Proof Tray Exit Sensor |
| | 32* | | Mailbox Relay Sensor |
| | 33* | | Mailbox Exit Sensor |
| | 35* | | Booklet Finisher (Japan Only) |
| | 36* | |] |
| | 37* | |] |
| | 38* | | |
| | 39* | |] |
| | 40* | | |
| | 41* | | |
| 7505* | Total Original Ja | im by Location | Displays the total number of original jams by location. These jams occur when the original does not activate the sensors. A "Paper Late" error occurs when the paper fails to activate the sensor at the precise time. A "Paper Linger" paper jam occurs when the paper remains at the sensor for longer than the prescribed time. |
| | 1* | | At Power On |
| | Paper Late Error No. | Paper Lag Error No. | Error Location |
| | 3 | 53 | Skew Correction Sensor |
| | 4 | 54 | Interval Sensor |
| | 5 | 55 | Registration Sensor |
| | 6 | 56 | Relay Sensor |
| ===== | / | 57 | Inverter Sensor |
| 7506* | Jam Count by C | opy Size | Displays the total number of copy jams by paper |
| | 5" A4 LEF | | - |
| | 6° A5 LEF | | - |
| | 14" B5 LEF | | - |
| | JO LILEF | | 4 |
| | | | - |
| | 132 A3 SEF | | - |
| | 133 A4 SEF | | |

SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES

| SP7 | | Mode Number | I | Function and [Setting] |
|-------|-------|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 7506* | 134' | A5 SEF | Displays the | total number of copy jams by paper |
| | 141' | B4 SEF | size. | |
| | 142' | B5 SEF | | |
| | 160' | DLT SEF | | |
| | 164' | LG SEF | | |
| | 166' | LT SEF | | |
| | 172' | HLT SEF | | |
| | 255' | Others | | |
| 7507* | Copy | Jam History (Transfer | Displays the | copy jam history of the transfer unit |
| | Shee | et) | in groups of ' | 10, starting with the most recent 10 |
| | 1* | Last | jams. | |
| | 2* | Last 1 | Sample Disp | ay: |
| | 3* | Last 2 | CODE: 007 | |
| | 4* | Last 3 | SIZE: USN | 0224 |
| | 5* | Last 4 | DATE: Mon | 0334 Mar 15 11:44:50 2000 |
| | 6* | Last 5 | where: | TMAI 13 11.44.30 2000 |
| | 7* | Last 6 | CODE is the | SP7-505-*** number (see above. |
| | 8* | Last 7 | SIZE is the p | aper size code in hex. |
| | 9* | Last 8 | TOTAL is the | e total jam error count (SP7-003) |
| | 10* | Last 9 | DATE is the | date the previous jamLEF occurred. |
| | | | Paper Size | Code (hex) |
| | | | A4 LEF | 05 |
| | | | A5 LEF | 06 |
| | | | B5 LEF | 0E |
| | | | LT LEF | 26 |
| | | | HLT LEF | 2C |
| | | | A3 SEF | 84 |
| | | | A4 SEF | 85 |
| | | | A5 SEF | 86 |
| | | | B4 SEF | 8D |
| | | | B5 SEF | 8E |
| | | | DLT SEF | A0 |
| | | | LG SEF | A4 |
| | | | LT SEF | A6 |
| | | | HLT SEF | AC |
| | | | Others | FF |
| 7508* | Origi | nal Jam History | Displays the | original jam history in groups of 10, |
| | 1* | Last | starting with | the most recent 10 jams. |
| | 2* | Last 1 | Sample Disp | lay: |
| | 3* | Last 2 | CODE: 00 | |
| | 4* | Last 3 | SIZE: USI | |
| | 5* | Last 4 | DATE: MO | JUSS4 n Mar 15 11:44:50 2000 |
| | 6* | Last 5 | where: | 11 Mai 13 11.44.30 2000 |
| | 7* | Last 6 | CODE is the | SP7-505-*** number (see above |
| | 8* | Last 7 | SIZE is the n | aper size code in hex. |
| | 9* | Last 8 | TOTAL is the | e total error count (SP7-003-001) |
| | 10* | Last 9 | DATE is the | date the previous jamLEF occurred. |

| Ī | SP7 | Mode Number | | Function and [Setting] |
|---|----------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| | 7801 | ROM No./Firmware Version | | Displays the ROM number and firmware version |
| | | | | numbers. |
| | 7803* | PM Counter Display | | Displays the PM counter since the last PM. |
| | 7804 | PM | Counter Reset | Resets the PM counter. To reset, press (¹). |
| | 7807 | SC/ | Jam Counter Reset | Resets the SC and jam counters. To reset, press①.This SP does not reset the jam history counters: |
| | | | | SP7-507, SP7-508. |
| | 7808 | Cou | nter Reset | Resets all counters except SP7-003-***, SP7- 006-***. To reset, press ⁽¹⁾ . |
| | 7810 | Access Code Clear | | Use to clear the access code if the customer forgets the code. After clearing the code is reset for Null and the password entry display does not open. To clear, press (1) . |
| | 7811 | Orig | inal Count Clear | Clears the original total display, displayed with SP7-002-***. To clear, press ①. |
| | 7816 | | Print Counter Reset | Resets the total copy count by paper tray. To |
| | | 1 | Tray1 | reset, press (1). |
| | | 2 | Tray2 | Use these SP modes when replacing the pick- |
| | | 3 | Tray3 | |
| | | 4 | Tray4 | |
| | | 5 | | |
| | 7000 | 6 | By-pass | |
| | 1822 | Сор Мас | nification | Magnification). |
| | 7825 | Tota | al Counter Reset | No longer used. Executing this SP has no effect. This SP is no longer required because the counter initialized (set to "0") at the factory. |
| | 7826* | MF Device Error Count | | This display is for the Japanese version only. Japan Only |
| | 7827 MF Device Error Count Clear | | Device Error Count Clear | This SP is for the Japanese version only. (Clears SP7-826.) Japan Only |
| | 7832 | Self | -Diagnosis Result Display | Execute to open the "Self-Diagnose Result Display" to view details about errors. Use the keys on in the display on the touch-panel to scroll through all the information. If no errors have occurred, you will see the "No Error" notation. |
| | 7833 | 7833 Pixel Coverage Ratio | | This SP mode displays the coverage ratio of the output (the ratio of the total pixel area of the image data to the total printable area on the paper). Note that this value is not directly proportional to the amount of toner consumed, although of course it is one factor that affects this amount. The other major factors involved include: the type, total image area and image density of the original, toner concentration and developer potential. |
| | | 1 | Last Pages | 0% to 100%. |
| | | 2 | Average Pages | 0% to 100%. |
| | | 3 | Toner Bottles In Use | 0 to 65,535 copies |

| SP7 | | Mode Number | Function and [Setting] |
|------|-----------------------------|---|---|
| 7833 | 4 | Copy Count: Previous Toner Bottle | 0 to 999,999 copies |
| | 5 | Copy Count: Toner Bottle Before Previous | |
| 7834 | Clea | ar Pixel Coverage Data | |
| | 1 | Last & Average | Clears counter for SP7833 001, 002 |
| | 2 | Toner Bottles In Use | Clears counter for SP7833 003 |
| | 3 | Page Counts (2 Prev. Toner Bottles) | Clears counter for SP7833 004, 005 |
| 7837 | Cop | y Counter: Copy Mode Clear | Press Execute to clear counter SP7304 (Copy Num – Copies by Mode) |
| 7838 | Сор | y Counter - Set Number Clear | Press Execute to clear counter SP7305 (Copy: Display Jobs by Mode) |
| 7839 | Job | Counter - Copy Mode Clear | Press Execute to clear counter SP7306 (Copy: Display Jobs by Mode). |
| 7840 | Doc | . Svr - Scan Counter Clear | Press Execute to clear counter SP7320 (Doc. Svr. – Scan Count. |
| 7841 | Doc | . Svr - Original Size Clear | Press Execute to clear counter SP7321 (Doc. Svr. – Original Size Display) |
| 7842 | Doc. Svr - Print Size Clear | | Press Execute to clear counter SP7323 (Doc. Svr – Print Size Display). |
| 7843 | Doc | e. Svr - Print Job Counter Clear | Press Execute to clear counter SP7324 (Doc. Svr. – Print Job Counter). |
| 7844 | Doc Clea | e. Svr - Job Count (Page No.) ar | Press Execute to clear SP7325 (Doc. Svr. – Job Count (Page No.). |
| 7845 | Doc Clea | e. Svr - Job Count (File No.) ar | Press Execute to clear SP7326 (Doc. Svr – Job Count (File No.) |
| 7846 | Doc Clea | e. Svr - Job Count (Set No.) ar | Press Execute to clear SP7327 (Doc. Svr. – Job Count (Set No. |
| 7847 | Doc Clea | e. Svr - Job Count (Prt Mode) ar | Press Execute to clear SP7328 (Doc. Svr – Job Count (Print Mode). |
| 7848 | Сор | y Counter/Doc. Svr Clear | Press Execute to clear the following SP codes: SP7301, SP7304, SP7305, SP7306, SP7320, SP7321, SP7323, SP7324, SP7325, SP7326, SP7327, SP7328. |
| 7901 | Ass | ert Info. | Used for debugging. DFU |
| | 1 | File Name |] |
| | 2 | # oF Lines | |
| | 3 | Location |] |

5.1.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING: SP2-902

NOTE: Always print a test pattern to confirm correct operation of the machine.

- 1. Enter the SP mode and select SP2-902.
- 2. Press ⁽²⁾ or ⁽³⁾.
 - ⁽²⁾ IPU Test Print
 - ⁽³⁾ Test Pattern
- 3. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press [⊕]. (See the tables below.)
- 4. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, press Yes. This selects the test pattern for printing.
- 5. Press Copy Window to open the copy window and then select the settings for the test print (paper size, etc.)
- 6. Press Start (*) twice. (Ignore the "Place Original" messages) to start the test print.
- 7. Press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode display.

| No. | Test Pattern | No. | Test Pattern |
|-----|-------------------------|-----|----------------------------|
| 0 | None | 8 | Grayscale (Horizontal) (8) |
| 1 | Vertical Line (1-dot) | 9 | Grayscale (Vertical) (8) |
| 2 | Horizontal Line (1-dot) | 10 | Cross Pattern (8) |
| 3 | Vertical Line (2-dot) | 11 | Cross Shape |
| 4 | Horizontal Line (2-dot) | 12 | Argyle Pattern |
| 5 | Alternate Dot Pattern | 13 | Cross Pattern (256) |
| 6 | Grid Pattern (1-dot) | 14 | Cross Pattern (64) |
| 7 | Vertical Stripes | 15 | Not used |

Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: IPU Test Print)

| h | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------|-----|---|
| No. | Test Pattern | No. | Test Pattern |
| 0 | None | 20 | Horizontal Line (1-dot) (Reversed LD1, LD2) |
| 1 | Vertical Line (1-dot) | 21 | Grid Pattern (1-dot) (Reversed LD1, LD2) |
| 2 | Horizontal Line (1-dot) | 22 | Grid Pattern (1-dot pair) (Reversed LD1, LD2) |
| 3 | Vertical Line (2-dot) | 23 | Independent Pattern (1-dot) (Reversed LD1, LD2) |
| 4 | Horizontal Line (2 dot) | 24 | 3 Grayscale |
| 5 | Grid Pattern (1-dot) | 25 | Grayscale (Horizontal) |
| 6 | Grid Pattern (1-dot pair) | 26 | Grayscale (Vertical) |
| 7 | (not used) | 27 | Grayscale (Vertical/Horizontal) |
| 8 | (not used) | 28 | Grayscale (Grid) |
| 9 | Full Dot Pattern | 29 | Grayscale (Horizontal Extension) |
| 10 | Black band | 30 | Grayscale (Vertical Extension) |
| 11 | Trimming Area | 31 | Grayscale (Horizontal Margin) |
| 12 | Trimming Area (2-dot) | 32 | Grayscale (Vertical Margin) |
| 13 | Argyle Pattern | 33 | Grayscale (Vertical/Horizontal Margin) |
| 14 | Argyle Pattern (2-dot_) | 34 | Grayscale (Horizontal Extension Margin) |
| 15 | Hound's Tooth Check (2-dot | 35 | Grayscale (Vertical Extension Margin) |
| | Horizontal) | | |
| 16 | Checker Flag Pattern | 36 | White Pattern |
| 17 | Point Black Pattern | 37 | Grid (1-dot pair) (OR Outside Data 1) |
| 18 | Black Band (Vertical) | | |
| 19 | Independent Pattern (4-dot) | | |

Test Pattern Table: SP2-902-3 Printing Test Patterns

5.1.4 INPUT CHECK

Main Machine Input Check: SP5-803

- 1. Enter the SP mode and select SP5-803.
- Enter the number (1 13) for the item that you want to check. A small box will be displayed on the SP mode screen with a series of 0's and 1's. The meaning of the display is as follows.

00000000

Bit 76543210

3. Check the status of each item against the corresponding bit numbers listed in the table below.

| Number | Rit | Description | Reading | | |
|-----------------|-----|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--|
| NULLIDEI | ы | Description | 0 | 1 | |
| | 7 | Fusing Exit Sensor | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 6 | Near End Sensor 2 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 5 | Near End Sensor 1 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| 1: Paper Feed | 4 | Not Used | | | |
| 1 (Upper Tray) | 3 | Paper Size Sensor 4 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 2 | Paper Size Sensor 3 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 1 | Paper Size Sensor 2 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 0 | Paper Size Sensor 1 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 7 | Duplex Unit Set Sensor | Unit set | Unit not set | |
| | 6 | Near End Sensor 2 | Off | On | |
| | 5 | Near End Sensor 1 | Off | On | |
| 2: Paper Feed | 4 | Fusing/Paper Output Motor Lock | Not Locked | Locked | |
| 2 (Lower Tray) | 3 | Paper Size Sensor 4 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 2 | Paper Size Sensor 3 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 1 | Paper Size Sensor 2 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 0 | Paper Size Sensor 1 | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 7 | Zero Cross Signal | Detected | Not detected | |
| | 6 | Transfer Belt Unit HP Sensor | Not present | Present | |
| | 5 | Exhaust Fan Lock Signal | Not locked | Locked | |
| 3: Registration | 4 | Cooling Fan Lock Signal | Not locked | Locked | |
| and Others | 3 | Main Motor Lock Signal | Not locked | Locked | |
| | 2 | Toner Overflow Sensor | Tank not full | Tank full | |
| | 1 | Cover Open | Cover closed | Cover opened | |
| | 0 | Registration Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |

| Number | Dit | Description | Reading | | |
|---------------|----------|------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--|
| Number | ы | Description | 0 | 1 | |
| | 7 | Duplex reverse path door | Closed | Open | |
| | 6 | Paper End Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| | 5 | Not used | | | |
| 4: By-pass | 4 | Paper Size Sensor 4, By-pass | Activated | Deactivated | |
| Feed | 3 | Paper Size Sensor 3, By-pass | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 2 | Paper Size Sensor 2, By-pass | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 1 | Paper Size Sensor 1, By-pass | Activated | Deactivated | |
| | 0 | Unit Set Signal | Yes | No | |
| | 7 | Not used | Yes | No | |
| | 6 | Unit Set Signal | Connected | Not connected | |
| | 5 | Paper Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| | 4 | Relay Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| 5. Relay Unit | 3 | Exit Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| (Bridge Unit) | 2 | Left Cover Switch | Switch pressed | Switch not pressed | |
| (Enage Ent) | | | (cover closed) | | |
| | 1 | Middle Cover Switch | Switch pressed | Switch not pressed | |
| | | | (cover closed) | | |
| | 0 | Right Cover Switch | Switch pressed | Switch not pressed | |
| | <u> </u> | <u> </u> | (cover closed) | | |
| | 7 | Feed Motor Lock | No | Yes | |
| | 6 | F-Gate Signal | Active | Not active | |
| | 5 | Height Sensor | Feed height | Not feed height | |
| 6: Unit Set | 4 | Paper Exit Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| 0. 0 | 3 | Fusing Unit | Detected | Not detected | |
| | 2 | Total Counter | Not detected | Detected | |
| | 1 | Key Counter | Detected | Not detected | |
| | 0 | Key Card Present | Detected | Not detected | |
| | 7 | Front cover/open closed | Open | Closed | |
| | 6 | Vertical feed path | Clear | Not clear | |
| | 5 | 2nd Tray Height Sensor | Paper not at upper limit | Paper at upper limit | |
| 7: Paper End | 4 | 1st Tray Height Sensor | Paper not at upper limit | Paper at upper limit | |
| | 3 | Lower Relay Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| | 2 | Upper Relay Sensor | Paper detected | Paper not detected | |
| | 1 | Lower Paper End Sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 0 | Upper Paper End Sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |

| Number | Rit | Description | Reading | | | | |
|---------------------|-----|-------------------------|----------------|---------|-------|----------------------|--|
| Number | ы | Description | | 0 | | 1 | |
| | 7 | Dip Switch - 8 | On | | | Off | |
| | 6 | Dip Switch - 7 | | On | | Off | |
| | 5 | Dip Switch - 6 | On | | | Off | |
| 8: DIP | 4 | Dip Switch - 5 | On | | | Off | |
| Switches | 3 | Dip Switch - 4 | On | | | Off | |
| | 2 | Dip Switch - 3 | On | | | Off | |
| | 1 | Dip Switch - 2 | On | | | Off | |
| | 0 | Dip Switch - 1 | On | | | Off | |
| | 7 | Not used | | | | | |
| | 6 | Right cover open/closed | Closed | ł | | Open | |
| | 5 | 1-Bin Unit Set | Detect | ed | | Not detected | |
| 9: Duplex Unit | 4 | LD, HP sensor | Positic | oned | | Not positioned | |
| | 3 | Exit Sensor (Jam) | Paper | detecte | ed | Paper not detected | |
| | 2 | Entrance Sensor (Jam) | Paper detected | | ed | Paper not detected | |
| | 1 | Paper End Sensor | Paper detecte | | ed | Paper not detected | |
| | 0 | Duplex Unit Switch | Cover closed | | | Cover open | |
| | 7 | Tray 4: Bit 1 | | | | | |
| | 8 | Tray 4: Bit 0 | Bit 1 | | Bit 0 | Capacity | |
| 10. | 5 | Tray 3: Bit 1 | 1 | | 1 | Full | |
| 10: Remainder of | 4 | Tray 3: Bit 0 | 1 | | 0 | 50% or more | |
| Feed Tray 1 | 3 | Tray 2: Bit 1 | 0 | | 1 | 10% or more | |
| r cea may r | 2 | Tray 2: Bit 0 | 0 | | 0 | Out, or tray not set | |
| | 1 | Tray 1: Bit 1 | | | | | |
| | 0 | Tray 1: Bit 0 | | | | | |
| | 7 | By-pass Yes/No | | | | | |
| | 6 | Not Used | | | | | |
| 44 | 5 | Not Used | | | | | |
| TT: Romaindor of | 4 | Not Used | | | | | |
| Feed Tray 2 | 3 | Not Used | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Capacity | |
| r cea may 2 | 2 | LCT: Bit 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Full | |
| | 1 | LCT: Bit 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 80% or more | |
| | 0 | LCT: Bit 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 50% or more | |
| | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | 30% or more | |
| | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 10% or more | |

| Number | Bit | Description | Reading | | |
|---------------|-----|------------------------|---------------------|------|--|
| Number | Dit | Description | 0 | 1 | |
| | 7 | Mailbox 9-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 6 | Mailbox 8-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 5 | Not used | - | - | |
| 12: Full Exit | 4 | Finisher: Shift Tray 1 | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| Tray 1 | 3 | Finisher: Shift Tray 2 | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 2 | Not used | - | - | |
| | 1 | 1-Bin Exit | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 0 | Machine Exit | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 7 | Mailbox 7-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 6 | Mailbox 6-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 5 | Mailbox 5-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| 13: Full Exit | 4 | Mailbox 4-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| Tray 2 | 3 | Mailbox 3-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 2 | Mailbox 2-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 1 | Mailbox 1-bin | Not full or no tray | Full | |
| | 0 | Mailbox Proof Tray | Not full or no tray | Full | |

Table 1: By-pass Feed Table Paper Size Data

| Number. | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Paper Width |
|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------|
| 4: By-pass | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Post Card |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | B6 SEF |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | B5 SEF |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | A5 SEF / 5.5" |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | B4 SEF |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | A4 SEF / 8.5" / 8" |
| | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | A3 SEF |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 11" x 17" |

ARDF Input Check: SP6-007

- 1. Enter the SP mode and select SP6-007.
- Enter the number (1 13) for the item that you want to check. A small box will be displayed on the SP mode screen with a series of 0's and 1's. The meaning of the display is as follows.



3. Check the status of each item against the corresponding bit numbers listed in the table below.

| Group | Bit No | Description | Reading | | |
|-------|---------|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| Group | Bit NO. | Description | 0 | 1 | |
| | 7 | Original width sensor 4 | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 6 | Original width sensor 3 | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 5 | Original width sensor 2 | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| 1 | 4 | Original width sensor 1 | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| I | 3 | Skew correction sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 2 | Original set sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 1 | Original B5 sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 0 | Original LG sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 7 | Original stopper HP sensor | Original stopper up | Original stopper | |
| | | | | down | |
| | 6 | Pick-up HP sensor | Cover closed | Cover opened | |
| | 5 | Top cover Sensor | Cover closed | Cover opened | |
| 2 | 4 | Lift sensor | Pick-up roller up | Pick-up roller down | |
| | 3 | Inverter sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 2 | Exit sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 1 | Registration sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| | 0 | Interval Sensor | Paper not detected | Paper detected | |
| 3 | 0 | Original A4 sensor | | | |

5.1.5 OUTPUT CHECK

NOTE: Motors keep turning in this mode regardless of upper or lower limit sensor signals. To prevent mechanical or electrical damage, do not keep an electrical component on for a long time.

Main Machine Output Check: SP5-804

- 1. Open SP mode 5-804.
- 2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check. (Refer to the table on the next page.)
- 3. Press On then press Off to test the selected item.



B079S902.WMF

NOTE: You cannot exit and close this display until you press off to switch off the output check currently executing. Do not keep an electrical component switched on for a long time.

SP5-804 Output Check Table

| No. | Description | No. | Description |
|-----|---|-------|--|
| 1 | 1st Paper Feed CL | 45 | Duplex Junction Gate Solenoid () |
| 2 | 2nd Paper Feed CL | 46 | Not used |
| 3 | 3rd Paper Feed CL (PTU) | 47 | Relay Junction Gate Solenoid |
| 4 | 4th Paper Feed CL (PTU) | 48~49 | Not used |
| 5 | By-pass Paper Feed CL | 50 | Tray Junction Gate Solenoid |
| 6 | LCT Paper Feed CL | 51 | Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid |
| | | 52 | Positioning Roller Solenoid (Finishers) |
| 13 | By-pass Pick-up Solenoid | | |
| 14 | LCT Pick-up Solenoid | 56 | Toner Bottle Motor |
| | | 57 | Transfer Belt Positioning Clutch |
| 17 | Transport Motor 1 (Finisher) | | |
| 18 | Transport Motor 2 (Finisher) | 62 | Quenching Lamp |
| 19 | Exit Motor (Finisher) | 63 | Charge Bias |
| 20 | Staple Motor (Finisher) | | |
| 21 | Punch Motor (Finisher) | 67 | Development Bias |
| | | 68 | Not used |
| 25 | LCT Motor | 69 | Transfer Belt Voltage |
| 26 | Bank Motor (Paper Tray Unit) | 70 | ID Sensor LED |
| 27 | Fusing/Feed-Out Motor | | |
| 28 | Main Motor | 75 | Exhaust Fan |
| 29 | Duplex Transport Motor | 76 | Elec. Equipment Cooling Fan (High Rev.) |
| 30 | Duplex Inverter Motor – Rev. | 77 | Elec. Equipment Cooling Fan (Low Rev.) |
| 31 | Duplex Inverter Motor – Fwd | 78 | Relay Unit Fan |
| 32 | Feed/Development Motor | 79 | Fusing Cooling Fan |
| | | 85 | Total Counter |
| 35 | Bank Relay Clutch (Paper | | |
| | Tray Unit) | | |
| 36 | Relay Clutch | 90 | LD (Laser Diode) |
| 37 | Not used | 91 | Not used |
| 38 | LCT Relay Clutch | 92 | Shift Tray Lift Motor (Finisher) |
| 39 | Registration Clutch | 93 | Jogger Motor (Finisher) |
| 40 | Not used | 94 | Stapler Unit Motor (Finisher) |
| 41 | Exit Junction Gate Solenoid (Upper Unit) | 95 | Stack Feed Out Motor (Finisher) |
| 42 | Duplex Junction Gate Solenoid (Lower Unit) | 96 | Shift Motor (Finisher) |
| | | 97 | Stapler Rotation Motor (Two-Tray Finisher) |

ARDF Output Check: SP6-008)

- 1. Open SP mode SP6-008.
- 2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check. (Refer to the table below.)
- 3. Press On then press Off to test the selected item. You cannot exit and close this display until you click Off to switch off the output check currently executing.

| No. | Description |
|-----|--------------------------|
| 1 | Feed Motor (Forward) |
| 2 | Feed Motor (Reverse) |
| 3 | Drive Motor (Forward) |
| 4 | Inverter Motor (Forward) |
| 5 | Inverter Motor (Reverse) |
| 6 | Feed Clutch |
| 7 | Inverter Solenoid |
| 8 | Pick-up Motor (Forward) |
| 9 | Pick-up Motor (Reverse) |

5.1.6 SMC PRINT OUT LISTS: SP5-990

1. Open SP mode 5-990 and select the number corresponding to the list that you wish to print.

| SMC | SMC (System Parameter and Data Lists) | | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| 1 | All Data List | | |
| 2 | SP Mode Data List | | |
| 3 | UP Mode Data List | | |
| 4 | Logging Data List | | |
| 5 | Self-Diagnostics Results List | | |
| 7 | NIB Summary | | |
| 8 | NetFile Application Log | | |
| 21 | Copy UP Mode List | | |
| 22 | Scanner SP Mode List | | |
| 23 | Scanner UP Mode List | | |

- 2. Press "Execute" on the touch panel.
- 3. Select "Single Face" or "Both Face".
- 4. After printing the list, press "Close" to return to the SP mode display.
- 5. Press Exit twice to close the SP Mode screen and return to copy mode.

5.1.7 MEMORY CLEAR: SP5-801

Executing Memory All Clear resets all the settings stored in the NVRAM to their default settings except the following:

| SP7-003-1: | Electrical total counter value | |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| SP5-811-1: | Machine serial number | |
| SP5-907: Plug & Play Brand Name and Production Name Setting | | |

- 1. Execute SP5-990 to print out all SMC Data Lists.
- 2. Open SP mode 5-801.
- 3. Press the number for the item that you want to initialize. The number you select determines which application is initialized. For example, press 1 if you want to initialize all modules or select the appropriate number from the table below.

| No. | What It Initializes | Comments |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | All modules | Initializes items 2 ~ 12 below. *1 |
| 2 | Engine | Initializes all registration settings for the engine and processing settings. *1 |
| 3 | SCS (System Control Service)/SRM | Initializes default system settings, CSS settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information. *1 |
| 4 | IMH (Image Memory Handler) | Initializes the registration setting for the image memory handler by deleting all image files on the HDD. |
| 5 | MCS (Memory Control Service) | Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored documents. |
| 6 | Copier application | Initializes all copier application settings. |
| 7 | Fax application | Initializes the fax reset time, job login ID, all TX/RX settings, local storage file numbers, and off-hook timer. |
| 8 | Printer application | Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP Bit SW, and printer CSS counter. |
| 9 | Scanner application | Initializes the scanner defaults for the scanner and all the Scanner SP modes. |
| 10 | Network application | Deletes the NFA management files and thumbnails, and initializes the JOB login ID. |
| 11 | NCS (Network Control Service) | Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartNetMonitor for Admin, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings. |
| 12 | R-FAX | Initializes the Job login ID, SmartNetMonitor for Admin, Job History, and local storage file numbers. |
| 14 | DCS | Initialization |
| 15 | UCS | Initialization |

^{1*}: Resetting 1~3 resets the operation panel screen coordinates, so after executing 1, 2, or 3, you must re-calibrate the screen.
Ξ

- 4. Press Execute, and then follow the prompts on the display to complete the procedure.
- 5. Make sure that you perform the following settings:
 - Do the laser beam pitch adjustment (SP2-109).
 - Do the printer and scanner registration and magnification adjustments (
 3.21 Replacement and Adjustment, "Copy Adjustments").
 - Do the touch screen calibration (3.21.4 Replacement and Adjustment, "touch screen calibration").
 - Referring to the SMC data lists, re-enter any values, which had been changed from their factory settings.
 - Do SP 3-001-2 (ID Sensor Initial Setting) and SP4-911-1 (HDD media check).
- 6. Check the copy quality and the paper path, and do any necessary adjustments.

5.2 DIP SWITCHES

Controller: DIP SW2

| DIP SW No. | ON | OFF |
|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 | IC Card Boot | System ROM Boot |
| 2 | | |
| 3 | Keep at "OFF" | |
| 4 | | |

I/O Board: DIP SW101

| DIP SW No. | Function | ON | | | OFF | | | |
|------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----|-------|-------------------|------|-------|
| 1 | Copy Speed | 35 cpm (| 35 cpm (180 mm/s) | | | 45 cpm (230 mm/s) | | |
| 2 | Jam Detection (see Note) | Off (| | | On | | | |
| 3 | Engine Program Recovery | On | On | | | Off | | |
| 4 | Print Output for Debugging | OFF (Do | OFF (Do not change) | | | | | |
| 5 | Factory Duplex Function Check | OFF (Do not change) | | | | | | |
| | | JPN | NA | EUR | China | Taiwan | Asia | Korea |
| 6 | Destination | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF | ON | ON | OFF |
| 7 |] | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF | ON | ON |
| 8 | | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON | ON | OFF | ON |

NOTE: Disabling jam detection is effective only for the main machine (not for the options).

5.3 USING THE DEBUG LOG

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows saving and retrieving error information for later analysis. Every time an error occurs the debug information is recorded in volatile memory but is lost every time the machine is switched off and on. The Save Debug Log feature provides two new features:

- The customer or CE can save the debug log to HDD as soon as an error occurs. This is especially useful for recording information about errors that do not generate an SC code.
- The CE can copy the information to HDD and then to an IC card for later analysis.

When an error occurs while the machine is operating, a debugging log is generated in memory but this log is lost as soon as processing resumes or after the machine is cycled off and on.

5.3.1 CAPTURING DEBUGGING INFORMATION

The machine must be setup up correctly with SP codes in order for the debug log to be captured for later retrieval. Otherwise, the debugging log is lost.

The debug information cannot be saved the until the "Save Debug Log" function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

Switching On the Debug Log Feature

- 1. Enter the SP mode.
 - Press Image that the set of th
 - Press and hold down C/O for more than 3 seconds.
 - Enter (5) (8) (5) (7) then press (#).
- 2. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", press (1).



3. Press (1) then press \bigotimes .

4. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", press ⁽²⁾.

| COPY : SP-5-857-002 |
|--------------------------|
| Save Debug Log |
| Target (1:IC Card 2:HDD) |
| 2 |
| Initial O |

- 5. Press (1) to select the IC Card or press (2) to select the HDD, then press \bigotimes .
 - Saves the debug log directly to the IC card inserted in the controller slot. If the machine does not have an HDD unit, or if the HDD is temporarily disabled, be sure to use this setting.
 - (2) Saves the debug log to HDD.

NOTE: This setting is normally set to "2" for writing the debug log to the HDD.

Setting the Timing for Debug Log Acquisition

You can specify that errors related to specific events be recorded in the debug log. **NOTE:** More than one event can be selected for retrieval.

1. Enter (5)(8)(5)(8) then press (#).

SP5858 (Debug Save When) contains the following features:

| 1 | Engine SC Error | Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated. |
|---|---------------------|---|
| 2 | Controller SC Error | Saves debug data when a controller-related SC Code is generated. |
| 3 | Any SC Error | Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number. |
| 4 | Jam | Saves data for jams. |

2. To save data for items 1, 2, or 4, press the appropriate key. The example below shows the "Engine SC Error" selected after pressing ①.



Press "ON" then press (#).

To save data for item 3 (an SC code), press (3).

| COPY : SP-5-858-001 | |
|---------------------|--|
| Any SC Error | |
| 670 | |

Enter the 3 digits for the SC error code then press #. For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section "4. Troubleshooting".

Selecting a Module for Retrieval

Specific error information related to a particular module can be selected for retrieval.

NOTE: SP5859 (Debug Save Key No.) allows you to define up to 10 keys. More than one key can be set.

- 1. Enter (5)(8)(5)(9) then press (#).
- 2. Under "5859" press the number of the key that you want to define. The example below shows the screen after "1" is pressed to define "Key 1".



3. Enter a number for the key.

| COPY : | SP-5-859-001 |
|--------|--------------|
| Debug | Save Key No. |
| Key 1 | |
| | 2222 |
| | |

4. Press (#) to save the key definition.

Service Tables The following keys can be specified. The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.

| SP5859 | COPY | FAX | PRINTER | SCANNER | WEB | |
|--------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|--|
| 001 | | | 2222 (SCS | | | |
| 002 | | | 2223 (SRM) | | | |
| 003 | | | 256 (IMH) | | | |
| 004 | | 1000 (ECS) | | | | |
| 005 | | | 1025 (MCS) | | | |
| 006 | 4848 (COPY) | 4846 (FAX) | 4400 (GPS) | 5375 (Scan) | 5682 (NFA) | |
| 007 | 2224 (BCU) | 1538 (FCS) | 4500 (PDL) | 5682 (NFA) | 6600 (WebDB) | |
| 008 | | 6016 (RFAX) | 4500 (GPS-PM) | 3000 (UCS) | 3300 (PTS) | |
| 009 | | 6017 (WEB) | 2000 (NCS) | 2000 (NCS) | 6666 (WebSys) | |
| 010 | | 2000 (NCS) | 2224 (BCU) | | 2000 (NCS) | |

Key to Acronyms

- ECS: Engine Control Service
- FCS: Fax Control Service
- GPS: GW Print Service
- GSP-PM: GW Print Service Print Module
- IMH: Image Memory Handler
- MCS: Memory Control Service
- NCS: Network Control Service
- NFA: Net File Application
- PDL: Printer Design Language
- PTS: Print Server
- RFAX: Remote Fax
- SCS: System Control Service
- SRM: System Resource Management
- WebDB: Web Document Box (Document Server)

Note the following restrictions on these settings:

- Only one of the 10 SP codes above can be selected for one key.
- You cannot mix settings for the groups for 005~010. For example, if you want to create a PRINTER debug log you must select all 9 available selections (001~009 in the PRINTER column of the Table above), and for a FAX debug log you must select all 10 selections (001~010 in the FAX column of the Table above.)

5.3.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG

Recording Errors Manually

When the machine issues an SC code in response to an error, or when a jam occurs, the error information is recorded in the debug log depending on how the system is set up with the procedures described above. However, information about undefined errors (errors that do not generate SC codes) that occur during copier operation or when printing from memory are not recorded automatically.

Undefined errors not recorded automatically can be recorded on the HDD by following the simple manual procedure described below.

- **NOTE:** In order to use this procedure, the Save Debug Log feature must be switched on and the HDD or IC card must be selected as the target.
- 1. Make sure that the Save Debug Log feature is switched on.
- 2. When the error occurs, on the operation panel, press 🖉 (Reset).
- 3. On the 10-key pad, press **01** then press and hold down **C** until the machine beeps then release.
- 4. After completing Steps 1~3, to continue switch the machine off then on.

Copying the Debug Log to the IC Card

- 1. Insert the IC card into the copier.
- 2. Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857 007 (Copy HDD to IC Card (Latest 4 MB) to write the debugging data to the IC card.
- 3. The IC card can hold up to 4MB of data. If the debugging data is larger than 4MB, you can switch to another IC card.

Converting the Debug Log to Binary Data

- 1. Remove the IC card from the copier then insert it into the PC equipped with an IC card slot.
- 2. Start SwapBox.
- 3. Select Image> Read then click OK to start reading the data.
- After confirming that the data has been read, select File> Save, then enter an appropriate file name and save the file.
 This completes converting the debugging log to binary data.

Analyzing the Debug Log Binary Data

The binary data created in the previous step must be sent to the Design Center for analysis. Since the amount of data can be fairly large (approximately 4 MB), compress the data with a standard compression program like ZIP or LZH and send it via email.

If a PC and the software for converting the IC card data to binary is not available, you can send or deliver the IC card.

A software application (GWLOG.EXE) is provided to convert the binary data file to a text file which can be read on screen or printed.

On the DOS command line, type:

C:\GWLOG<Path>

and press ENTER. The <Path> is the path to the directory (folder) where the converted binary file created in the previous was saved.

NOTE: 1) The program converts binary file to a text file in the same directory.

- 2) The target file name for the text file is generated automatically.
- 3) If the debug log was copied to an IC card of the wrong format, then an error is issued and the program halts.

6. DETAILED SECTIOIN DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a summary of some of the new features described in this section.

The section numbers preceded with the reark refer to the section number of this document where the new or amended feature is described.

- The physical location of the IOB has changed, making it much easier to remove.
 (~6.1.1)
- There is no PFB in this machine. The function of the PFB has been built into the IOB. (€6.1.1)
- The layout of the controller board has been modified. (€6.1.2)
- Image processing for the B079 (35 cpm)/ B082 (45 cpm) has been revised.
 (~6.2)
- A new cleaning blade has been added to the PCU in order to provide better cleaning of the OPC drum. (#6.3.1, 6.3.2)
- The voltage adjustment for thicker paper, OHP sheets, etc. fed from the bypass tray has changed. (~6.4.1, 6.4.2)
- The cleaning roller inside the fusing unit has been re-designed to dissipate heat more efficiently (~6.6.1)
- A new design feature jogs the fusing/paper exit motor at prescribed intervals in order to dislodge toner and paper dust collected on the hot roller strippers.
 (@6.6.2)
- The line speed of the B082 (45 cpm) machine is adjusted down automatically to 35 cpm in order to print on thick paper. This adjustment was not provided in the previous models. (~6.6.4)
- Two new cooling fans have been added to the fusing unit to further ensure that the fusing unit runs cooler for the new toner which has a much lower melting temperature.(←6.6.5)
- To reduce the incidence of toner scanner, the sponge strip has been replaced with a velvet strip that extends across the length of the fusing unit, new triangular seals are attached to each corner of the fusing unit. (~6.6.6)

Detailed Description

6.1 BOARD STRUCTURE

6.1.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



This machine uses the GW (Grand Workware) architecture, which allows the copier to be expanded as an MFP by installing simple modular components (ROM DIMMs) on the controller board. The BICU and FCU are connected to the controller via a PCI bus.

Controller (Main Board)

Takes charge of controlling memory and all peripheral devices.

BICU (Base Engine and Image Control Unit)

This is the engine control board. It controls the following functions.

- Engine sequence
- Timing control for peripherals
- Image processing, video control

17 January, 2003

IOB

The IOB (Input/Output Board) handles the following functions:

- Drive control for the sensors, motors, and solenoids of the main unit
- PWM control for the high voltage supply board
- Serial interface with peripherals
- Fusing control
- **NOTE:** The IOB is now located directly behind the rear covers for easier access. The machine no longer contains the PFB (Paper Function Board). The functions of the PFB (paper feed control) have been taken over by the IOB. The same IOB is used for both the B079 and B082 but the DIP switches must be set correctly for each. See Section "3 Replacement and Adjustment" for details.

SIB (Scanner Interface Board): Controls the scanner, and serves as the signal I/F board for the SBU and the OPU. The SIB passes signals between the BICU and the scanner unit components, and transmits video signals from the SBU to the BICU.

OPU (Operation Panel Unit): Controls operation panel and display.

SBU (Sensor Board Unit): Receives analog signals from the CCD and converts them into digital signals.

LDDR (Laser Diode Driver): The LD driver circuit board.

MDB (Motor Drive Board): Controls the scanner motor.

Mother Board: This board interfaces the controller and the BICU and FCU.

FCU (Facsimile Control Unit): Controls fax communications and fax features.

6.1.2 CONTROLLER



6-4

The controller controls all applications, including copier, printer, scanner, and fax applications. To add the optional printer, scanner, or fax applications, ROM DIMMs must be installed on the controller. The fax option, however, also requires FCU and NCU installation.

NOTE: The controller boards are machine specific and are not interchangeable. The controller board for the B079 (35 cpm) must be installed in the B079 and controller board for the B082 (45 cpm) must be installed in the B082.

The following firmware and application software can be downloaded from the Controller IC Card slot.

- Controller (System OS)
- Operation panel
- BICU (engine control)
- Printer
- Scanner
- Fax
- PostScript 3
- NIB
- FCU

CPU: Employs RM7065. Clock frequency: 300 MHz.

ASIC: Uses a dedicated chip developed for use with GW architecture. The CPU and memory I/F employ a 120 MHz bus (32 bit). These components perform CPU and I/F control and also control all of the following functions: memory, local bus, interrupts, PCI bus, video data, HDD, network, operation panel, IEEE1284, and image processing.

SDRAM: Comprises a 64 MB RAM chip, expandable with a 128 MB SDRAM.

System Flash ROM: Provided with an 12 MB Flash ROM for the system and NIB firmware.

Flash ROM DIMM Slots: Two slots are provided for two ROM DIMMs (8 MB or 16 MB). Expansion slots provided for the optional printer/scanner, and PostScript 3 applications.

NVRAM: 32 KB of NVRAM are provided for the system. NVRAM stores many settings, including OS system log information, copier calendar, current system settings, user accounts (max. 100) and all settings for the fax, printer, scanner, and network. The NVRAM also has the RTC (Real Time Clock) for time management.

NOTE: Optional NVRAM, which can store to 400 user accounts, can be installed on the controller.

Detailed Descriptions **HDD:** A 3.5" HDD (more than 20 GB) can be connected using an IDE I/F. The hard disk is partitioned as shown below.

| Partition | Size | Function | Power OFF | Comment |
|--------------------------|---------|---|-----------|--|
| File System 1 | 500 MB | Downloaded fonts, forms. | Remains | |
| File System 2 | 500 MB | Job spooling area. | Erased | |
| File System 3 | 2000 MB | Work data area | Remains | Used for document server application. |
| Image TMP | 5200 MB | Collation, sample print, protected print. | Erased | Storage capacity (Max. * ²): 2500 pp. (Copy) |
| Image LS* ¹ | 7800 MB | Document server, local storage archive | Remains | 9000 pp. (Copy) 9000 pp. (Print/ Fax/ Scanner) |
| Image Area Management | 100MB | Stores image area information | Remains | |
| Job Log | 20 MB | Job log. | Remains | |
| Others | 3362 MB | | | |
| Total | 20 GB | | Remains | |

*1: When an application uses an image page, first it uses the Image LS area. If this area is in use and not available, then it uses the Image TMP area.

^{*2}: These areas are used for applications to store copy, print, fax, and scanned pages. The actual number of pages that can be stored differs depending on the content of the document and the scanning resolution.

6.2 IMAGE PROCESSING



6.2.1 OVERVIEW

SBU: The SBU (Sensor Board Unit) converts the analog signal from the CCD to an 8-bit digital signal and sends it to the SIB.

SIB: Relays image signals and controls the scanner.

BICU: The BICU (Base Engine Image Control Unit) performs timing control and command control. The IPU on the BICU processes auto shading, filtering, magnification, γ correction, and gradation. The memory controller performs image compression, decompression, and memory address control (for binary picture processing mode only)

LD Unit: Performs dual channel multi-beam exposure, multiple exposure, and synchronous detection.

Controller: Performs dual channel multi-beam exposure, multiple exposure, and synchronous detection.



6.2.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)



The CCD converts the light reflected from the original into an analog signal. The CCD line has 7200 pixels at a resolution of 600 dpi.

The CCD has two output lines to the analog processing ASIC, one for handling odd and one for handling even pixels. The analog processing ASIC performs the following operations on the signals received from the CCD:

Z/C (Zero/Clamp): Adjusts the black level for even pixels to match the odd pixels.

Signal composition: Analog signals for odd and even pixels from the CCD are merged by a switching device.

Signal amplification: The analog signal is amplified by amplifiers in the AGC circuit. The maximum gains of the amplifiers are controlled by the CPU on the BICU board.

After the above processing, the analog signals are converted to 8-bit signals by the A/D converter. This gives a value for each pixel on a scale of 256 shades of gray. Then, this data goes to the BICU via the SIB.

6.2.3 AUTO IMAGE DENSITY (ADS)



This mode prevents the background of an original from appearing on copies.

The copier scans the auto image density detection area [A]. This corresponds to a narrow strip at one end of the main scan line, as shown in the diagram. As the scanner scans down the page, the IPU on the BICU detects the peak white level for each scan line, within this narrow strip only. From this peak white level, the IPU determines the reference value for A/D conversion for the scan line. Then, the IPU sends the reference value to the A/D controller on the SBU.

When an original with a gray background is scanned, the density of the gray area is the peak white level density. Therefore, the original background will not appear on copies. Because peak level data is taken for each scan line, ADS corrects for any changes in background density down the page.

As with previous digital copiers, the user can select manual image density when selecting auto image density mode and the machine will use both settings when processing the original.

Detailed Description

6.2.4 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)

Overview



B079D905.WMF

The image data from the SBU goes to the IPU (Image Processing Unit) IC on the BICU board, which carries out the following processes on the image data:

- 1. Auto shading
- 2. Filtering (MTF and smoothing)
- 3. Magnification
- 4. γ correction
- 5. Grayscale processing
- 6. Binary picture processing
- 7. Error diffusion
- 8. Dithering
- 9. Video path control
- 10. Test pattern generation

The image data then goes to the HDD.

6.2.5 IMAGE PROCESSING MODES

The user can select one of the following modes with the User Tools screen: Text, Text/Photo, Photo, Pale, Generation. Each of these modes has a range of different settings (e.g. Soft, Normal, Sharp, etc). For each mode, a Custom Setting options is also available. This Custom Setting holds the values selected with the SP modes, which can be adjusted to meet special requirements that cannot be covered by the standard settings.

To display this screen, press User Tools/Counter> Copier/Document Server Settings> General Features> Copy Quality.

| 0014 | | | | 14NOV 2000 12:32 |
|---------------------------------|----------------|--------|---------------|------------------|
| Adjust quality for each type, t | hen press[OK]. | | | |
| ► Text | Soft | Normal | Sharp | Custom Setting |
| ► Text/Photo | Photo Priority | Normal | Text Priority | Custom Setting |
| ► Photo | Print Photo | Normal | Glossy Photo | Custom Setting |
| ► Pale | Soft | Normal | Sharp | Custom Setting |
| Generation Copy | Soft | Normal | Sharp | Custom Setting |
| | | | | Cancel Cancel |
| | | | | |

B079D906.WMF

| Mode | Function |
|-----------------|--|
| Text | Best reproduction of text and sharp lines. Ignores background texture. (pg. 6-14) |
| Text/Photo | Good reproduction of mixed text and photographs with accurate grayscaling, better than that achieved in the Text mode. (pg. 6-15) |
| Photo | Best possible reproduction of photographs. (rg.6-16) |
| Pale | Reproduction similar to Text mode, but of lower contrast. Ideal for copying thin originals. (pg.6-17) |
| Generation Copy | Attempts to achieve the best reproduction of copied originals, which have faded due to making copies of copies. (pg.6-18) |

Detailed Jescription



6-12

6.2.6 SUMMARY OF IMAGE PROCESSING FUNCTIONS

Shading correction: Compensates for the possible differences in the amount of light at the edges and center of a scanned image caused by the scanner lens, or scatter among pixels of the CCD.

Pre-Filter Background erase: Attempts to eliminate the heavy background texture from copies (newspaper print or documents printed on coarse paper). Elements below the selected threshold level are eliminated.

Pre-Filter Smoothing: Reproduces halftones while reducing the incidence of moiré which can occur as a result of compressing and then decompressing the image.

Main scan magnification: Adjusts magnification to the desired level by processing adjusting multiple, adjacent pixels in the direction of main scanning. Adjustment of magnification in the sub scan direction is done by changing the scanning speed.

Independent dot erase: Attempts to recognize and eliminate scattered, independent dots in copies. Processes only pixels of high density and eliminates those of low density.

Filtering (MTF filter/smoothing): Performs mainly edge enhancement with the MTF filter. Performs smoothing only in the Photo mode. The matrix size of the filter is 9 pixels x 7 lines.

Gamma (γ) **coefficient:** Controls the image density for images processed with grayscaling. Copy density adjustment is achieved with special notch γ coefficient conversion. The best γ coefficient suited for the selected mode can be stored and adjusted as needed.

Grayscale processing: Performs reproduction of grayscales, using mainly error diffusion. (In the Photo mode, conducts processing with dithering.)

Detailed Descriptions

6.2.7 IMAGE PROCESSING STEPS AND RELATED SP MODES

Text Mode

The Text mode achieves quality reproduction of text and sharp lines and ignores background texture. Processing is conducted with a high resolution MTF filter; special processing with the γ coefficient prevents background reproduction and achieves the best reproduction of images with error diffusion. Because the Soft and Normal settings use a weak MTF filter, the quality of the image is improved with the elimination of moiré. The Sharp selection uses an MTF filter stronger than that of the Normal setting, thus increasing the sharpness of lines.



Note: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down ^(#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Text/Photo Mode

Text/Photo mode achieves high quality reproduction of pictures with accurate grayscaling. Processing is conducted with the special γ coefficient which reproduces a wide range of grayscale. Compared with the Text mode, text reproduced in the Text/Photo mode appears lighter and textured backgrounds could appear on copies, but the incidence of moiré is reduced with and edge detection filter. Because Photo Priority uses an MTF filter weaker than that of the Normal setting, the quality of the image is improved with the elimination of moiré. The Text Priority selection uses an MTF filter stronger than that of the Normal setting, thus increasing the sharpness of lines.



Note: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down (#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Photo Mode

Photo mode emphasizes grayscale processing to achieve the best possible reproduction of photographs and eliminate moiré by using the highest density and γ coefficient in the reproduction of grayscales and dithering. Print Photo performs smoothing and dithering for photos copied from magazines, newspapers, etc. The Normal selection uses a higher resolution setting and employs error diffusion but does not use smoothing to improve the appearance of text in photographs. Glossy photo paper employs MTF filter processing and error diffusion to copy glossy or matte photographs and achieves a low incidence of moiré, thus reproducing copies of photographs of high resolution.

For photo mode, the features used depend on which type of greyscale processing has been selected for Photo mode (either 'dithering and smoothing' or 'error diffusion and MTF'); this depends on the setting of SP 4904 001. Details are explained later in this section.



Note: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down (#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Pale (Low-Density Mode)

Pale achieves image quality comparable with Text mode, but of lower contrast. Pale employs an MTF filter stronger than that employed by the Text mode and uses a darker γ coefficient, thus increasing the incidence of copying textured backgrounds. Ideal for copying extremely thin originals. Soft employs an MTF filter weaker than Normal, thus achieving a softer image with less moiré. Sharp employs an MTF filter stronger than that of Normal, thus increasing the sharpness of lines.



Note: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down (#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Generation Copy Mode

Generation Copy, based mainly on Text mode, aims to achieve the best reproduction of copied originals (so called "generation copies" or copies of copies). This mode 1) employs an MTF filter weaker than that of the Text mode to eliminate spurious dots, 2) uses the γ coefficient to smooth the image, and 3) uses generation processing to thicken thin lines. Soft employs an MTF filter weaker than the Normal setting to achieve a softer image with less moiré. Sharp employs an MTF filter stronger than that for Normal to emphasize lines for better image quality.



Note: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down ^(#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

6.2.8 PRE-FILTERING

SP mode settings 4903 10 \sim 15 select pre-filters by changing the filter coefficient settings.

| Original Mode | SP No. | Default | Setting | Mag. | Smoothing |
|------------------|--------------|---------|------------|------------|-----------|
| Text | SP4903 10 | 0 | 0 | 25% ~ 400% | OFF |
| Photo | SP4903 12 | 0 | 1 | 25% ~ 50% | Weak |
| Text/Photo | SP4903 13 | 0 | 2 | 25% ~ 50% | Medium |
| Pale | SP4903 15 | 0 | 3 | 25% ~ 50% | Strong |
| Generation | SP4903 16 | 0 | 4 | 25% ~ 99% | Weak |
| | \downarrow | | 5 | 25% ~ 99% | Medium |
| Range | 0~9 | | 6 | 25% ~ 99% | Strong |
| | | | 7 | 25% ~ 400% | Weak |
| | | 8 | 25% ~ 400% | Medium | |
| | | | 9 | 25% ~ 400% | Strong |

Note: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down ^(#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

These SP mode settings are provided to reduce the incidence of moiré in the reproduction of images whose data signals have been compressed in the direction of the main scan. However, these SP adjustments can cause different effects in the reproduction of images depending on:

- Whether they contain areas shaded with dot screening (newspaper, magazine photos)
- Their reduction ratios.

These adjustments can also cause blurring in the reproduction of images that contain:

- Low density dots
- Low contrast text characters
- Fine lines

While filter processing is provided to reduce the incidence of moiré generated from digital signals, you must always pay attention to how these adjustments affect text characters and fine lines.



6.2.9 BACKGROUND ERASE

SP4903 65 \sim 69 cut the background from around images scanned from an original of rough texture such as a newspaper or parchment. The larger the setting done for this SP, the more background drops out from behind the image or text.

This SP mode setting for image processing executes separately from the ADS (Auto Image Density) function that is performed in the SBU to set the peak white level for scanning to eliminate background.

For example, if this SP is set for "20", then the scanning data up to 20 is set to "0" and cut from the image. The range for this SP code adjustment is $0 \sim 255$. The recommended range for a normal document is $0 \sim 60$. An official document on rough texture paper would fall in the recommended range of $120 \sim 160$. The correct setting for any original will vary with the texture and quality of the background, but remember that selecting a higher numbers for this setting will eventually lower the quality of the document or cause unexpected results.



| Mode | Background Erase Filter | Default | Range |
|-----------------|-------------------------|---------|---------|
| Text | SP4903 65 | 0 | |
| Photo | SP4903 66 | 0 | |
| Text/Photo | SP4903 67 | 0 | 0 ~ 255 |
| Pale | SP4903 68 | 0 | |
| Generation Copy | SP4903 69 | 0 | |

NOTE: The "0" setting switches off the background erase filter.

6.2.10 INDEPENDENT DOT ERASE

Independent dot erase (set with the SP mode settings listed in the table below) remains in effect even when a "Custom Setting" is selected with the User Tools.

Independent dot erase targets for elimination random, irregular shaped black dots on the surface of the original that would otherwise appear in the copy after scanning and printing. The strength of the application of this feature can be adjusted for each mode.

The filter compares each pixel with the pixels around an area 7 pixels x 7 lines. If the sum of the pixels at the edges is smaller than the threshold value, the object pixel is changed to zero (white). depending on the strength of the SP mode setting. Setting a larger setting increases the number of dots erased, but if set too high, this SP can also remove small or fine text characters or even portions of large text characters.

| Mode | Default | Range | |
|-----------------|-----------|-------|-------------|
| Text | SP4903 60 | 5 | |
| Text/Photo | SP4903 62 | 0 | $0 \sim 15$ |
| Pale | SP4903 63 | 0 | 0 ~ 15 |
| Generation Copy | SP4903 64 | 8 | |

NOTE: The "0" setting switches off the filter.



6.2.11 LINE WIDTH CORRECTION

This section describes how to select a setting for line width correction (LWC) for the Generation Copy mode. LWC (Line Width Correction) can make lines thicker or thinner in generation copies.

| SP4903 75 LWC: Gene | eration Mode |
|---------------------|--------------|
|---------------------|--------------|

| Setting | Effect | | |
|---------|------------------------|--|--|
| 0 | No correction | | |
| 1 | Lighter lines | | |
| 2 | Darker lines (Default) | | |
| 3 | Thick lines | | |

SP4903 75 adjusts the thickness of lines in faint generation copies. Specifically, this adjustment affects the lines targeted for adjustment by:

- SP4903 76 (LWC Threshold (Main Scan): Generation Mode). Targets main scan, lines parallel to the direction of feed [A].
- SP4903 77 LWC Threshold (Sub Scan): Generation Mode). Targets sub scan, lines at right angles to the direction of feed [B].

For sharp thin lines, set SP4903 75 for a higher LWC setting, and for softer lines set a lower setting. For thick lines, select "3".

- To thin (or thicken) lines in the main scan direction, select an SP4903 75 setting larger (or smaller) than the setting for SP4903 76
- To thin (or thicken) lines in the sub scan direction select an SP4903 75 setting larger (or smaller) than the setting for SP4903 77.

copied images.



than the setting for SP4903 77. However, remember that too large a setting can cause unexpected results in

| SP Mode | Default | Range |
|--|---------|-------|
| SP4903 76 LWC Threshold (Main Scan): Generation Mode | 1 | 0~5 |
| SP4903 77 LWC Threshold (Sub Scan): Generation Mode | 1 | 0.00 |

6.2.12 FILTERING

Interactive SP Codes

Overview

The tables in this section are for quick reference. For details about how each SP code operates and interacts with other SP settings, please refer to the sections that follow.

Many of the SP codes used for image processing adjustments are interactive in that they exist as master and slave SPs. Use the *master* SP codes for gross adjustment. If you need to fine adjust a master setting, set the master setting to "0" to access its *slave* SP codes.

NOTE: In the tables below, the master SP codes are set in **bold** type. The slave SP codes are indented and set in normal type.

Keep the following points in mind while you are using these SP codes:

- The slave SP codes cannot be accessed until the master SP is set to "0".
- For the slave SP code settings to take effect, the master SP code must remain set to "0".
- If the master SP code is reset to any value other than "0", then the slave SP codes are disabled and their adjustments have no effect on image processing.
- If a master SP code is provided with both a Strength and Level (coefficient) adjustment, adjust the Strength setting first to achieve the approximate effect that you want, then do the Level adjustment.

Text Mode

Adjust the image for the Text mode with the four master settings within their allowed ranges (for ranges see Section "5. Service Tables". To fine adjust a master setting set it to "0" then perform the adjustments listed below.

| SP4904 020 = 0 | Text (General) Quality 25-64% |
|----------------|---|
| SP4903 020 | Main Scan Filter Level: Text 25%-64% |
| SP4903 021 | Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 25%-64% |
| SP4903 022 | Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 25%-64% |
| SP4903 023 | Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 25%-64% |
| SP4904 021 = 0 | Text (General) Quality 65-154% |
| SP4903 024 | Main Scan Filter Level: Text 65%-154% |
| SP4903 025 | Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 65%-154% |
| SP4903 026 | Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 65%-154% |
| SP4903 027 | Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 65%-154% |
| SP4904 022 = 0 | Text (General) Quality 155-256% |
| SP4903 028 | Main Scan Filter Level: Text 155%-256% |
| SP4903 029 | Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 155%-256% |
| SP4903 030 | Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 155%-256% |
| SP4903 031 | Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 155%-256% |
| SP4904 023 = 0 | Text (General) Quality 257%-400% |
| SP4903 032 | Main Scan Filter Level: Text 257%-400% |
| SP4903 033 | Sub Scan Filter Level: Text 257%-400% |
| SP4903 034 | Main Scan Filter Strength: Text 257%-400% |
| SP4903 035 | Sub Scan Filter Strength: Text 257%-400% |

Detailed escription

Photo Mode

Dithering or Error Diffusion for Photo Mode?

Use SP4904 001 to select either dithering or error diffusion to process image fills and halftones.

- **0** Selects the dithering and smoothing filter.
- **1** Selects the error diffusion and MTF filter.

Photo Mode Dithering: SP4904 001 = 0

If you select "0" for SP4904 001 to enable dithering halftones, only one SP code is available for fine adjusting dithering.

| SP4903 037 | Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| | |

Photo Mode Error Diffusion: SP4904 001 = 1

If you select "1" for SP4904 001 to enable error diffusion, all the SP codes in the Mode tables below (Text Mode, Text/Photo Mode, etc.) are available for adjustment.

Use the *master* SP codes gross adjustment of the image processing mode after you have set SP4904 001 = 1 for error diffusion. If you need to fine adjust a master setting, set the master setting to "0" to access its slave SP codes.

Adjust the image for the Photo mode with the one master setting within its allowed range (for the range, see Section "5. Service Tables"). To fine adjust the master setting set it to "0" then perform the adjustments listed below.

| SP4904 024 = 0 | Photo (General Quality) |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| SP4903 036 | Photo MTF (Edge) |
| SP4903 038 | Photo MTF (All) |
| SP4903 091 | Filter Strength: Photo (Edge) |
| SP4903 092 | Filter Adj.: Photo (Edge Det.) |
| SP4903 093 | Filter Adj.: Photo (Mag.%) |
| SP4904 013 | Halftone Adjustment: Edge Detection |

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down (#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Text/Photo Mode

Adjust the image for the Text/Photo mode with the four master settings within their allowed ranges (for ranges, see Section "5. Service Tables"). To fine adjust a master setting set it to "0" then perform the adjustments listed below.

| SP4904 025 = 0 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 25%-64% |
|----------------|---|
| SP4903 039 | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 25%-64% |
| SP4903 040 | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 25%-64% |
| SP4903 079 | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 25%-64% |
| SP4903 080 | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25%-64% |
| SP4903 081 | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 25%-64% |
| SP4904 008 | Gray Adj: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 25-64% |
| SP4904 026 = 0 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 65%-154% |
| SP4903 043 | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 65%-154% |
| SP4903 044 | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 65%-154% |
| SP4903 082 | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 65%-154% |
| SP4903 083 | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154% |
| SP4903 084 | Filter Adj. Text/Photo (Mag.%) 65%-154% |
| SP4904 009 | Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 65-154% |
| SP4904 027 = 0 | Text/Photo (General Quality) 155%-256% |
| SP4903 047 | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 155%-256% |
| SP4903 048 | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 155%-256% |
| SP4903 085 | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 155%-256% |
| SP4903 086 | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155%-256% |
| SP4903 087 | Filter Adj.; Text/Photo (Mag.%) 155%-256% |
| SP4904 010 | Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 155-256% |
| SP4904 028 = 0 | Text/Photo (General) Quality 257%-400% |
| SP4903 051 | Text/Photo (Edge) Coefficient 257%-400% |
| SP4903 052 | Text/Photo (All) Coefficient 257%-400% |
| SP4903 088 | Filter Strength: Text/Photo (Edge) 257%-400% |
| SP4903 089 | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257%-400% |
| SP4903 090 | Filter Adj.: Text/Photo (Mag.%) 257%-400% |
| SP4904 011 | Gray Adj.: Text/Photo (Edge Det.) 257-400% |

- Detailed Descriptio
- **NOTE:** An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down (#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Also, SP4904 007 adjusts the error diffusion process that is used in text/photo mode.

Gray adjustment: At areas defined as edges, error diffusion is done on text to create sharp lines to better define text characters, but in other areas, grayscale processing for photographs is done. Select a lower setting for better reproduction of photographs and a higher setting for sharper text. For details, refer to the SP table.

Pale Mode

Adjust the image for the Pale mode with the one master setting within its allowed range (for range see Section "5. Service Tables". To fine adjust the master setting set it to "0" then perform the adjustments listed below.

| SP4904 029 = 0 | Pale (General) Quality |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| SP4903 055 | Filter Level: Light Original |
| SP4903 056 | Filter Strength: Light Original |

Generation Copy Mode

Adjust the image for the Generation Copy mode with the one master setting within its allowed range (for range see Section "5. Service Tables". To fine adjust the master setting set it to "0" then perform the adjustments listed below.

| SP4904 030 = 0 | Generation (General) Quality |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| SP4903 057 | Filter Level: Generation Copy |
| SP4903 058 | Filter Strength: Generation Copy |

Text Mode MTF Filter

This section describes how to select the MTF filter coefficient and filter strength for the Text mode. You can use the SP mode settings listed in the table below to adjust these items for scanning in Text mode:

- MTF filter coefficient for the main scan and sub scan
- MTF filter strength for the main scan and sub scan

| Text Mode | Coeff | icient | Strength | |
|-------------|------------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| (Mag.) | Main Scan . Sub Scan . | | Main Scan . | Sub Scan . |
| 25% ~ 64% | SP4903 20 | SP4903 21 | SP4903 22 | SP4903 23 |
| 65% ~ 154% | SP4903 24 | SP4903 25 | SP4903 26 | SP4903 27 |
| 155% ~ 256% | SP4903 28 | SP4903 29 | SP4903 30 | SP4903 31 |
| 257% ~ 400% | SP4903 32 | SP4903 33 | SP4903 34 | SP4903 35 |
| Ranges | 0 ~ 15 | 0 ~ 13 | 0 ~ 7 | 0 ~ 7 |

Strengthening the MTF filter sharpens the edges of text characters and improves the appearance of low contrast text but can also cause moiré to appear in photos on the same original.

Conversely, weakening the MTF filter softens the edges of text characters and reduces the occurrence of moiré but low contrast characters may fade.

Strengthen or weaken the MTF filter for the Text mode only when necessary.

Adjustment of the MTF filter coefficient performs very fine level adjustment of the applied strength of the MTF filter. Adjustment of the MTF filter strength greatly affects the rate of the change applied to the image. Basically, you should first just the MTF filter strength in 1 step increments without adjusting the coefficient to achieve nearly the effect you want, and then use the coefficient settings for fine adjustment.

Coefficient and strength adjustments for main scan affect lines parallel to the direction of scanning [A].

Coefficient and strength adjustments for sub scan affect lines at right angles to the direction of scanning [B].



Detailed Descriptions

Text/Photo, Photo Mode Filter

SP mode settings listed in Columns 2~4 below adjust the clarity of originals that contain text, thin lines, and photos; the SP codes of Columns 5~6 are intended to adjust the clarity of originals with text and thin lines or only photos. The photo mode settings are only valid if SP 4904 001 is set to 1.

| Mode, Mag. | Filter Setting: Edge | Filter Setting: All | Filter Strength: Edge | Filter Adj.: Edge Det. | Filter Adj.: Mag. |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Text/Photo 25 ~ 64% | SP4903 39 | SP4903 40 | SP4903 79 | SP4903 80 | SP4903 81 |
| Text/Photo 65 ~ 154% | SP4903 43 | SP4903 44 | SP4903 82 | SP4903 83 | SP4903 84 |
| Text/Photo 155 ~ 256% | SP4903 47 | SP4903 48 | SP4903 85 | SP4903 86 | SP4903 87 |
| Text/Photo 257 ~ 400% | SP4903 51 | SP4903 52 | SP4903 88 | SP4903 89 | SP4903 90 |
| Photo (Error Diffusion) | SP4903 36 | SP4903 38 | SP4903 91 | SP4903 92 | SP4903 93 |
| Ranges | 0~7 | 0~7 | 0~3 | 0~15 | 0~15 |

NOTE: An SP code number and name set in **bold italic** denotes an SSP (Special Service Program) mode. To access an SSP, enter the SP mode: press and hold down (#) on the 10-key pad then "Copy SP" on the touch-screen.

Filter Setting: Edge (Column 2): Provides filter processing of edges to improve the clarity of originals that contain text and lines. Selecting a larger value sharpens the clarity. However, increasing the value also increases the possibility of producing moiré in the image.

Filter Setting: All (Column 3): Provides filter processing for the overall image, not to improve just text, lines, or photographs, but to improve the image as a whole. This filter coefficient reduces the incidence of moiré in images that contain shaded areas created with dots. Increasing the value improves reproduction of low contrast text and lines. However, increasing the value also increases the possibility of producing moiré in the image.

Filter Strength: Edge (Column 4): Aims to increase the *strength* of the "Filter Setting: Edge" effect that processes edges to improve the clarity of originals that contain text and lines. Increasing this setting not only increases the strength of the effect and creates thicker text characters and lines, but can also cause moiré to appear in the image. On the other hand, decreasing this setting lessens the effect, creating thinner characters and lines and also reduces the incidence of moiré.

Filter Adj.: Edge Detection (Column 5): Broadens the *range* of the effect of the "Filter Setting Edge" SP. Lowering this setting broadens the range for edge filter processing and increases clarity. Also, using this SP together with "Filter Adj. Mag." below can sharpen edges to an extent that an abnormal looking image is created.

Filter Adj.: Magnification (Column 6): Allows gradual adjustment of clarity in original images that contain varying degrees of clarity between text and lines, or between areas of the same image. Increasing these settings in large increments could easily cause moiré to appear in the images. These settings should always be changed in small increments.

Follow these general rules with these settings:

- Increasing the settings dramatically increases clarity but can also increase the incidence of moiré.
- Reducing the settings produces a smoother image, reduces the incidence of moiré, but also reduces the effect of the filters.
- Adjusting the "Filter Adj. Mag." SPs in combination with other settings can even produce abnormal images.

Also, SP4904 007 adjusts the error diffusion process that is used in text/photo mode.

Pale, Generation Mode Filter

The SP mode settings listed in the table below are used to adjust MTF filter coefficient and strength for the Pale mode and Generation Copy modes.

| Mode | Coefficient | Strength |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------|
| Pale Mode | SP4903 55 | SP4903 56 |
| Generation Copy | SP4903 57 | SP4903 58 |
| Ranges | 0~6 | 0 ~ 7 |

Strengthening the MTF filter sharpens the edges of text characters and improves the appearance of low contrast text but can also cause moiré to appear in photos on the same original. Conversely, weakening the MTF filter softens the edges of text characters and reduces the occurrence of moiré but low contrast characters may fade.

Strengthen or weaken the MTF filter for the Text mode only when necessary.

Adjustment of the MTF filter coefficient performs very fine level adjustment of the applied strength of the MTF filter. Adjustment of the MTF filter strength greatly affects the rate of the change applied to the image. Basically, you should first just the MTF filter strength in 1 step increments without adjusting the coefficient to achieve the effect you want, and then use the coefficient settings for fine adjustment.
Photo Mode Smoothing for Dithering

Strengthening this SP4903 37 (Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode) makes images smoother and reduces the occurrence of moiré but can also cause fading. Strengthen this setting only when necessary. Only valid if SP 4901 001 is at 0.

| Smoothing Coefficient | Range |
|--|-------|
| SP4903 37 (Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode) | 0~7 |

Photo Mode Grayscale

This SP mode adjustment sets how grayscales are processed when the user selects Photo mode on the operation panel.

SP4904 1 Grayscale Photo Mode

| Setting | Description |
|---------|--|
| 0 | Dithering and smoothing |
| 1 | Error diffusion, MTF filter correction for edges |

If "0" is selected, the image grayscales are processed with dithering and filter processing, just as they are processed with the "Print Photo" selection on the operation panel. In this case the filter processing means smoothing only. The filter coefficient for smoothing can be adjusted with SP4904 37 (Smoothing Filter in Photo Mode).

If "1" is selected, then the image grayscales are processed with error diffusion processing, just as they are processed with the "Normal" and "Glossy Photo" settings on the operation panel. The MTF filter applied is the same as that applied for the "Normal" setting.

To achieve better photo image quality with slightly less clarity in lines and text, select "0" for dithering. You can also adjust SP4904 2 to achieve better reproduction of photographs.

On the other hand, to achieve better clarity in text and lines, with a slight sacrifice in the quality grayscale and smoothness in photographs, select "1" for error diffusion. To improve the clarity of fine lines and text, you can also increase the strength of the MTF filter. However, increasing the strength of the filter can also increase the incidence of moiré in areas of newspaper, magazine, or other photographs created with dot screening.

Photo Mode Image Quality

This section describes how to select a setting to improve image quality in the Photo mode with dithering in order to create an extremely smooth photo image.

Generally, a larger dithering matrix uses rougher dither pattern to reproduce a smoother gray image, but lowering the resolution can make text and lines more difficult to see. Conversely, a smaller dithering matrix uses a finer dithering pattern to reproduce a gray image of rougher texture, but raising the resolution can make text and lines easier to see.

| Setting | Dither Pattern | Picture Quality | Text Quality | Processing Priority |
|---------|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--|
| 0 | 8 x 8 (75 lines) | High | Low | Dot screen areas |
| 1 | 8 x 8 (106 lines) | Highest | Low | Filled areas (highest priority) Default |
| 2 | 6 x 6 (142 lines) | Medium | Medium | Filled areas |
| 3 | 4 x 4 (212 lines) | Low | High | Resolution |

SP4904 002 Quality Photo Mode

For these dither adjustments to take effect, SP4904 1 (Grayscale Photo Mode) must be set to "0" to enable dithering.

Here are some general rules:

- If your main concern is reproducing legible text, use the smaller matrixes, but a smaller matrix could cause spurious lines to appear in images.
- When using the smallest matrix with setting "3" (4 x 4), you should switch off the smoothing filter for the Photo mode by setting SP4903 37 to "0".
- Use the largest dither matrix (setting "0") for originals that contain dot screening such as newspaper and magazine photographs.

Detailed Descriptions

6.2.13 OTHERS

Vertical Black Line Correction

This section describes how to select a setting to correct vertical black lines. SP4904 5 (Special Text Density) adjusts the overall intensity of the image to eliminate vertical black lines in originals caused by documents scanned on a copy machine with dirty optics.

| SP Mode | Default | Range |
|-------------------------------|---------|-------|
| SP4904 5 Special Text Density | 0 | 0 ~ 7 |

Normally, the default setting (0) leaves this feature switched off.

Select a higher setting to increase the effect or a lower setting to decrease the effect. High density vertical black lines may require a higher setting, but a higher setting could cause the overall density of the copy to lower, or could cause low density areas to drop out completely.

NOTE: Generally, this SP code corrects most low density vertical black lines but may not be able to correct extremely dark or wide black lines.

Density Settings

This section describes how to adjust the density settings for the Pale mode Generation Copy mode, and Text mode.

SP4904 3 is used to switch the density characteristics to binary digital processing for black and white originals to achieve better balance between text and images, correct shadows that appear around text in handwritten documents, to enhance documents written in pencil, or to achieve stark contrast when copying blueprints, building plans, etc.

| SP4903 3 Densi | ty Setting for | r Low Density | y Original Mode |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
|----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|

| Settings | Density Characteristics |
|----------|--|
| 0 | Selects γ normal density (Default). |
| 1 | Digitizes to near binary image. |

SP4904 4 is used to switch between normal density and better reproduction of areas with graduated fill in originals copied in the Generation Copy mode. To improve the appearance of graduated fill areas of high density, set to "1" so the process can ignore black and more accurately reproduce areas with graduated fill. For example, the "1" setting is ideal for copying Generation Copy originals of medical charts that contain images of internal organs.

SP4904 4 Density Setting for Copied Original Mode

| Settings | Density Characteristics |
|----------|---|
| 0 | Selects normal density (Default) for Generation Copy originals. |
| 1 | Produces better gradation in fill areas of high density. |

If "1" is selected for SP4904, the following SP mode settings may also need adjustment.

| SP No. | Function | Recommended Setting |
|-----------|---|---------------------------|
| SP4903 57 | Filter Level: Generation Copy | 4 (or change as required) |
| SP4903 58 | Filter Strength: Generation Copy | 2 (or change as required) |
| SP4903 64 | Independent Dot Erase: Generation Copy | 0 (OFF) |
| SP4903 69 | Background Erase Level: Generation Copy | 0 OFF |
| SP4903 75 | Line Width Correction: Generation Mode | 0 (LWC OFF) |

ADS Level

This section shows you how to adjust the center notch for the ADS (Automatic Density Setting) level. The notches are not displayed during ADS adjustment. Of 7 steps (notches) the center notch is 4. This is the value adjusted with this SP code.

SP5106 6 (ADS Level Selection) selects the image density used in ADS mode. For example, if you set SP5106 66 to "2", pressing the Auto Image Density key toggles the display off and manual notch 2 is selected. This SP code is adjusted, if the customer cannot attain clean copies after performing automatic density adjustment.

This mode prevents the background of an original from appearing on copies.

The copier scans the auto image density detection area, a narrow strip at one end of the main scan line. As the scanner scans down the page, the IPU on the BICU detects the peak white level for each scan line in this narrow strip only. The IPU uses this peak white level as a reference value for analog-to-digital conversion of the scan line, then the IPU sends the reference value to the A/D controller on the SBU.

When an original with a gray background is scanned, for example, the density of the gray area becomes the peak white level density, so the original background will not appear on copies. Because peak level data is taken for each scan line, ADS corrects for any changes in background density down the page.

As with previous digital copiers, the user can select manual image density when selecting auto image density mode and the machine will use both settings when processing the original.

6.2.14 PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF SP MODES

Solving Problems

This section describes some common problems that can be solved with SP code adjustments. This table lists the recommended settings; fine adjustments may be required for the actual type of originals that the customer is copying.

NOTE: To do the settings in the table below, first you must set the Master SP code to "0". (**•**"FILTERING", 6-23~6-31)

| Job | User Tool | Custom Setting Adjustment |
|--|---|---|
| Eliminate blue lines from graph paper, or erase shadows caused by originals that have been pasted up for layout. | Lighten the image density for Text mode. Select "Soft" for Text mode (User Tools). | Increase the setting of SP4903 60 (Independent Dot Erase) to about 6 ~ 10. Increase the setting of SP4903 65 (Background Erase) to about 20 ~ 60. |
| Eliminate orange or other color backgrounds from official documents. | | Increase the setting of SP4903 60 (Independent Dot Erase) to about 10 ~ 15. Increase the setting of SP4903 65 (Background Erase) to about 120 ~ 160. |
| Reproduce blue lines of graph paper. | Darken the image density for Text/Photo mode. Select "Sharp" for the Text/Photo mode (User Tools). | |
| De-emphasize fine lines in jagged valleys and reduce the occurrence of moiré. | Select "Soft" for Text mode (User Tools). | Weaken the MTF filters for Text mode: • SP4903 24, Main Scan: 9 • SP4903 25, Sub Scan: 13 • SP4903 26, Main Scan: 2 • SP4903 27, Sub Scan: 2 |
| Reduce the occurrence of moiré when reducing the size of the original for copying. | Select "Soft" for Text mode (User Tools). | Weaken the MTF filters for Text mode reduction: SP4903 20, Main Scan: 14 SP4903 21, Sub Scan: 13 SP4903 22, Main Scan: 1 SP4903 23, Sub Scan: 1 |
| Reproduce areas of graduated fill in high density originals in Photo mode. | Select "Glossy Photo" for Photo mode (User Tools). | |
| Sharpen text in Photo mode. | Select "Normal" or "Glossy Photo" for Photo mode (User Tools). | Set SP4904 1 to "1" to enable error diffusion. Strengthen the settings for the Photo mode MTF filters coefficients: • SP4903 36: Select "3" • SP4903 38: Select "1" |
| Improve the appearance of originals handwritten with pencil, or make lighter copies of color originals (invoices and other commonly used business forms) | Select "Sharp" for Pale mode (User Tools). Select "Sharp" for Text mode (User Tools). | Strengthen the MTF filters for Pale mode: SP4903 55: Select "3" SP4903 56: Select "4" Strengthen the MTF filters for Text mode: SP4903 24: Set to "9". SP4903 25: Set to "13". SP4903 26: Set to "3". SP4903 27: Set to "3". |

Recommended Settings for MTF Filters

Text Mode

Text Mode Filter Setting(25% ~ 64%) -

| MTF Strength | Strong | ← Default | | | Weak | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|-----------|----|----|--------|----|----|------|----|
| Default Settings: | | Sharp | | | Normal | | | Soft | |
| SP4903 20 Main Filter Level: Text | 15 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 9 | 14 | 10 | 9 |
| SP4903 21 Sub Filter Level: Text | 13 | 13 | 12 | 12 | 13 | 10 | 13 | 13 | 10 |
| SP4903 22 Main Filter Strength | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| SP4903 23 Sub Filter Strength: Text | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Text Mode Filter Setting (65% ~ 154%) -

| MTF Strength | Stro | ng | + | Default | | | | Weak | |
|--------------------------------|------|-------|----|---------|--------|----|----|------|----|
| Default Settings: | | Sharp | | | Normal | | | Soft | |
| SP4903 24 Main Filter Level | 9 | 9 | 15 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 14 | 11 |
| SP4903 25 Sub Filter Level | 13 | 11 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| SP4903 26 Main Filter Strength | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 |
| SP4903 26 Sub Filter Strength | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 |

Text Mode (155% ~ 256%) -

| MTF Strength | Strong | ← Default | | | _ | Weak | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------|-----------|----|----|--------|------|----|------|----|
| Default Settings: | | Sharp | | | Normal | | | Soft | |
| SP4903 28 Main Filter Level | 11 | 10 | 9 | 9 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 9 |
| SP4903 29 Sub Filter Level | 13 | 13 | 13 | 10 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 10 |
| SP4903 30 Main Filter Strength | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| SP4903 31 Sub Filter Strength | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |

Text Mode (257% ~ 400%) -

| MTF Strength | Strong | Ļ | ← Default → | | › | Weak | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------|-------|-------------|----|--------------|------|----|------|----|
| Default Settings: | | Sharp | | | Normal | | | Soft | |
| SP4903 32 Main Filter Level | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 15 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 |
| SP4903 33 Sub Filter Level | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| SP4903 34 Main Filter Strength | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| SP4903 35 Sub Filter Strength | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |

Pale Mode

| MTF Strength | Strong ← | | Default | | \rightarrow | | Weak | | |
|--|----------|-------|---------|---|---------------|---|------|------|---|
| Default Settings: | | Sharp | | | Normal | | | Soft | |
| SP4903 55 Filter Level: Light Original | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 6 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 6 |
| SP4903 56 Filter Strength: Light Original | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 2 |

Generation Copy Mode

| MTF Strength | Strong ← | | | Default | | | \rightarrow | | Weak |
|--|----------|-------|---|---------|--------|---|---------------|------|------|
| Default Settings: | | Sharp | | | Normal | | | Soft | |
| SP4903 55 Filter Level: Light Original | 2 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 6 | 5 | 4 |
| SP4903 56 Filter Strength: Light Original | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |



6.3 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

6.3.1 OVERVIEW



- 1. Toner Collection Coil
- 2. Toner Collection Plate
- 3. Image Density Sensor
- 4. Pick off Pawl
- 5. OPC Drum (\060 mm)
- 6. Transfer Entrance Guide

- 7. Charge Roller
- 8. Charge Roller Cleaning Roller
- 9. Drum Cleaning Blade 2
- 10. Quenching Lamp
- 11. Drum Cleaning Blade 1

6.3.2 DRUM CLEANING



The PxP (Polyester Polymerization) toner of this machine is of much finer particle size so in addition to the stationary cleaning blade, mounted with two screws at the bottom of the PCU, an additional cleaning blade [A] has been added to increase the efficiency of drum cleaning.

The new cleaning blade is held in contact with the drum by two small springs [B] (one on each end) that keep the cleaning blade in contact with the drum. This cleaning blade is not a counter blade.

Every time the PCU is opened for replacement or cleaning, the spring closest to the front of the PCU must moved in order to retract the cleaning blade away from the OPC drum. After cleaning or replacement, the spring must be returned to its original position to keep the blade in contact with the OPC drum for normal operation. For details, see Section "3 Replacement and Adjustment".

Detailed Descriptions

6.4 DRUM CHARGE

6.4.1 CORRECTION FOR PAPER WIDTH AND THICKNESS

NOTE: This correction is done for the bypass tray only.

The by-pass tray can be used for non-standard paper narrower than sizes accepted by the paper trays. Thicker paper, OHP sheets, etc. can also be loaded in the by-pass tray but adjustments must be performed with the SP modes listed below in order to avoid jams and copy quality problems.



| SP Mode | SP Name | |
|----------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| SP2001 1 | Charge Roller Bias Adjustment | Width 216 - 297 mm (Default: -1630 V) |
| SP2309 1 | Paper Lower Width [a] | Width limit (Default: 150 mm) |
| SP2309 2 | Paper Upper Width [b] | Width limit (Default: 216 mm) |
| SP2914 1 | Cα | Adjust 10V/step (Default: 250 V) |
| SP2914 2 | Сβ | Adjust 10V/step (Default: 50 V) |

The way that these SP modes are used is shown below.



For example, with the default settings, if the paper width fed from the by-pass tray is 200 mm, the charge roller voltage will be -1450 + 50 V.

6.4.2 DEVELOPMENT BIAS

Mechanism

Black areas of the latent image are at a low negative charge (about -150 V) and white areas are at a high negative charge (about -950 V).

To attract negatively charged toner to the black areas of the latent image on the drum, the high voltage supply board [A] applies a bias of –510 volts to the development roller throughout the image development process. The bias is applied to the development roller shaft [B] through the bias terminal spring [C] and bias terminal [D].



The development bias voltage (-510 V) can be adjusted with SP2-201 (Development Bias).

Correction for paper width and thickness (by-pass tray only)

The by-pass tray can be used for non-standard paper narrow than sizes accepted by the paper trays. Thicker paper, OHP sheets, etc. can also be loaded in the bypass tray but adjustments must be performed with the SP modes listed below in order to avoid jams and misfeeds.

| SP Mode | SP Name | |
|----------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| SP2201 1 | Development Bias | Width 216 - 297 mm (Default: -600V) |
| SP2309 1 | Paper Lower Width [a] | Width limit (Default: 150 mm) |
| SP2309 2 | Paper Upper Width [b] | Width limit (Default: 216 mm) |
| SP2914 3 | Process Control Setting (Βγ) | Adjust 10V/step (Default: 250V) |
| SP2914 4 | Process Control Setting (Bδ) | Adjust 10V/step (Default: 50V) |

The way that these SP modes are used is shown below.



For example, with the default settings, if the paper width fed from the by-pass tray is 200 mm, the development bias voltage will be -510 + 50 V.

6.5 PAPER FEED

6.5.1 PAPER REGISTRATION



The registration drive roller [A] and idle roller [B] correct the skew of the paper to ensure that the leading edge of the paper is positioned correctly at the drum. The paper feed/development motor [C] drives the registration mechanism.

The registration sensor [D] is positioned just before the registration rollers. When the leading edge activates the registration sensor, the registration clutch is switched off and the registration rollers stop turning. However, the relay clutch [E] remains on slightly longer. This delay allows more time for the paper to press against the registration rollers and buckle slightly to correct any skew. The registration sensor also detects misfeeds.

Next, the registration clutch [F] actuates and the relay clutch at the correct time to align the paper with the image on the drum. The registration rollers then feed the paper to the image transfer section.

Two new dust blades have been added around the registration roller. The idle roller dust blade [G] cleans the registration idle roller. This dust blade has a small dust box that collects paper dust that must be emptied periodically.

The registration roller dust blade [H] cleans the registration roller. For details about how to remove and clean these new parts, see Section "3 Replacement and Adjustment".

6.6 IMAGE FUSING AND PAPER EXIT

6.6.1 CLEANING MECHANISM



The cleaning roller [A], in constant contact with the pressure roller [B], collects toner and paper dust from the surface of the pressure roller.

Because the cleaning roller is metal, it can collect adhering matter better than the pressure roller, which is coated with Teflon.

Some new design features have been implemented in order to cope with the lower temperatures required for new toner which has a melting temperature much lower than the previous toner. The cleaning roller [A] is composed of an aluminum shell with an internal "heat pipe" suspended in the middle of the roller to dissipate heat more rapidly.

Detailed Descriptions

6.6.2 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER CLEANING

After a job of more than the specified number of pages ends, the fusing/exit motor switches off and on to rotate the hot roller in order to dislodge toner clinging to the hot roller strippers.

When printing ends, the fusing/exit motor switches off for 15 sec. then switches on for 15 sec. This on/off cycle is repeated for the number of times specified with SP3905 1 (Default: 1 off/on cycle). While the fusing/exit motor is switched off/on during the cleaning cycle, all fans remain on.

NOTE: The hot roller strippers are also be force cleaned by adjusting and raising the setting of SP5959 (Image Timing Adjustment) which allows the drum and hot roller to turn freely to allow more time for cleaning before printing. However, make sure that the customer understands that increasing this SP setting slows down the first print time.

These are the SP codes that control hot roller stripper cleaning. (For details, refer to Section "5. Service Tables".

| No. | Name | Function |
|----------|---------------------|--|
| SP3905 1 | Number of Rotations | Prescribes the number of times the hot roller is rotated at the end of the print job if the print job exceeds the number of pages specified with SP3905 2. (Default: 1) |
| SP3905 2 | Number of Pages | Prescribes the number of pages to print and trigger hot roller stripper cleaning. Cleaning executes only if the number of pages in the print job exceeds this number. (Default: 15 pp.) |

The timing chart below shows the fusing/exit motor switched off and on twice at the end of a print job.



B079D912.WMF

Here are some important points to keep in mind about this new feature:

- If a request to start a print job is received during cleaning cycle in the timing chart above, cleaning stops and the new print job starts. During a normal print job, the fusing/exit motor switches on as soon as the paper reaches the registration roller, but in this case the fusing/exit motor remains on.
- If a request to enter the Off mode is received while hot roller stripper cleaning is in progress, the machine enters the Off mode and the cleaning cycle stops immediately.
- If the machine switches to any of the energy saver modes (low power mode, etc.) the cleaning cycle completes and does not halt.
- The cleaning cycle is not interrupted during free rotation of the hot roller when the machine is getting ready to print.
- Opening the front door, however, will stop the cleaning cycle.



6.6.3 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL



The fusing unit has two fusing lamps: the first fusing lamp (center: 650W) [A] heats the center of the fusing roller, and the second fusing lamp (ends: 550W) [B] heats both ends of the hot roller. This arrangement ensures even heat on all surfaces of the roller.

In order to control the temperature of the roller, two high response thermistors are attached to the unit, one near the center [C] and one at the end [D] of the hot roller.

Temperature Control



There are two types of temperature control:

- On/off control (Default)
- Phase control.

Either mode can be selected with SP1104 (Fusing Temperature Control).

After the machine is powered on, the CPU checks the ac frequency for 500 ms, in case phase control is selected later for the temperature control, and then switches on the fusing lamp.

As soon as both the center and end thermistors detect the print ready temperature (also known as the "re-load" temperature), the machine can operate. The "reload" temperature is $3 \degree C$ below the fusing temperature (this depends on the settings of SP1105 1~4, 7, 8). As soon as the thermistors detect the fusing temperature, the CPU switches the lamps off but frequently switches on/off again in order to maintain the fusing temperature.

The default temperatures of SP1105 for these models are set $10 \sim 30$ degrees lower than the temperatures for the previous machines. Some new SP codes have been added and others removed. For details, see Section "5. Service Tables".



Fusing Idling Temperature

If copies are not sufficiently fused soon after the main power switch is turned on, fusing idling should be enabled with SP1103 1.

When fusing idling is enabled, it is done when the temperature reaches the print ready ("re-load") temperature. The re-load temperature can be adjusted with SP1105 5,6.

In the opposite case, even if fusing idling is disabled, it is done when the temperature at power-up \leq 15 $^\circ C$

The fusing idling time is as follows.

| Temperature at | Fusing Idling Mode | | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|------------|------------|--|--|--|
| power-on | 0: Disabled | 1: Enabled | SP1103 1 | | | |
| 15 °C or less | 30 s | 30 s | SD1102.2 | | | |
| Higher than 15°C | Not done | 30 s | SF 1 103 Z | | | |

6.6.4 CPM DOWN FOR THICK PAPER

Because the fusing temperatures are set lower for the new toner which has a lower melting point, the results of printing on thick paper cannot be guaranteed at 45 cpm on the B082. Therefore, the 45 cpm line speed is adjusted down to 35 cpm as follows:

- After switching from Normal to Thick Paper for printing, the machine halts temporarily and re-starts for 35 cpm running.
- If the previous job included stapling or other finisher processing, these settings remain in effect for the next job on thick paper after the line speed is adjusted.
- If the print job on thick paper does not include an image on the page (a cover), then the speed is not adjusted down from 45 cpm to 35 cpm.
 - **NOTE:** The previous machine automatically reduced line speed 30% (ppm down) for thick paper. In these models, however, the speed is reduced from 45 cpm to 35 cpm for the 45 cpm machine. This adjustment is performed automatically for the B082 (45 cpm) machine only.

Note these other important points regarding cpm down for thick paper on the 45 cpm machine:

- When the line speed switches from 45 cpm to 35 cpm for thick paper, the transfer current changes to the settings specified with SP2301 (Transfer Current Adjustment). (For details, see Section "5. Service Tables".) Bias voltage, development and other settings are not affected.
- Fusing temperature adjustment switches on, but no operation can start until the machine reaches the temperature specified for the job.
- The ID sensor pattern is created and the line speed remains the same until the end of the job.
- The intensity of the LD unit is lowered evenly, 30 steps from its specified value.

Detailed Descriptions

6.6.5 COOLING AND OVERHEAT PROTECTION



The fusing unit operates at temperatures lower than the previous model in order to accommodate the new toner which has a lower melting temperature. In order to further ensure cooler running temperatures for the fusing unit, two cooling fans have been added.

The side cooling fan [A] and corner cooling fan [B] switch on when the temperature of the fusing unit exceeds 150 °C and switch off when the main motor switches off.

If the hot roller temperature exceeds 230 °C for 5 seconds or more, the CPU cuts off the power to the fusing lamp, and SC543 (Fusing Overheat Error) will be displayed.

Even if the thermistor overheat protection fails, there is a thermostat in series with the common ground line of the fusing lamp. If the temperature of the thermostat reaches 210 $^{\circ}$ C, the thermostat opens, removing power from the fusing lamp. At the same time, the copier stops operating. At this time, SC542 (Fusing Temperature Warm-up Error) will be displayed.

6.6.6 TONER SCATTER PREVENTION



To reduce the incidence of toner scanner, the sponge strip has been replaced with a velvet strip [A] that extends across the length of the fusing unit,

At each end of the strip [B] and [C] new seals have been added.

Detailed Descriptions

SPECIFICATIONS

1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

| Configuration | Desktop | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Copy Process | Dry electrostatic | trans | fer system | | |
| Original | Sheet/Book | | | | |
| Original Size | Maximum A3/11 | l" x 17 | 211 | | |
| Copy Paper Size | Paper tray, | A3/1 | 1" × 17" - A5 SEF | | |
| | Duplex: | | | | |
| | By-pass tray: | A3/1 | 1" × 17" - A6 SEF | | |
| | Non-standard | Width: 100 - 297 mm (3.9" – 11.7") | | | |
| | sizes: | Leng | th: 148 - 432 mm (5.8" <u>–</u> 17.0") | | |
| Copy Paper Weight | Paper Tray/ Duplex: | 64 - 1 | 105 g/m² (20 - 28 lb.) | | |
| | By-pass: | 52 - 1 | 163 g/m² (16 – 44 lb.) | | |
| Reproduction Ratios | 7R5E: | Metri | c version (%): 400, 200, 141, 122, 115, | | |
| | | | 93, 82, 75, 71, 65, 50, 25 | | |
| | | Inch | version (%): 400, 200, 155, 129, 121, 93, | | |
| | 85, 78, 73, 6 | | | | |
| | Zoom: | 25~ | 400% in 1% steps | | |
| Copying Speed | B079 | 35 cp | om A4, 81/2" x 11" LEF, 1-to-1 (ADF) | | |
| | B082 | 45 cp | om, A4, 81/2" x 11" LEF, 1-to-1 (ADF) | | |
| First Copy Time | B079 | 4.5 s | , 1st Tray, A4/81/2" x 11" LEF | | |
| | B082 | 3.6 s | , 1st Tray, A4/81/2" x 11" LEF | | |
| Warm-up Time | B079 | Less | than 18 s | | |
| | B082 | Less | than 20 s | | |
| Continuous Copy | 1~999 (operatio | n pan | el entry) | | |
| Paper Capacity | 1,050 sheets | • | , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , | | |
| | (500 sheets/tray | / x 2 w | (ith 50 sheets in by-pass tray) | | |
| Paper Output | A4, 81/2" x 11" a | and | 500 sheets | | |
| | smaller | | 050 shasts | | |
| Device Course | B4 and larger. | | 250 Sheets | | |
| Power Source | North America: | | 120V/60 Hz, More than 12.5 A | | |
| Dimensione | Europe/Asia: | | 220 - 240 V/50, 60 Hz, More than 6.8 A | | |
| Dimensions (W x D x H) | 670 mm x 650 n | nm x <i>i</i> | ⁷ 20 mm (26.3° x 25.6° x 28.3°) | | |
| Weight | Less than 79 kg (174 lb.) | | | | |
| Resolution | 600 dpi (Scanning and Printing) | | | | |
| Gradation | 256 levels (Scanning and Printing) | | | | |
| Original Archive | More than 2,500 A4 pages for document server (ITU-T No. 4 Chart) | | | | |
| Toner Replenishment | Cartridge excha | inge (5 | 550 g) | | |
| Total Counter | Electric counter | Electric counter | | | |

Spec.

Power Consumption

Mainframe only

Ξ.

| | B079 | B082 |
|---------------|---|---|
| Copying | Less than 1.2 kW | Less than 1.2 kW |
| Warm-up | Less than 1.25 kW | Less than 1.25 kW |
| Stand-by | Less than 139 W/h | Less than 170 W/h |
| Auto Off Mode | Ave. 4.5 W/h (NA) Ave. 5 W/h (EU, Asia) | Ave. 4.5 W/h (NA) Ave. 5 W/h (EU, Asia) |
| Maximum | Less than 1.44 kW (NA) Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia) | Less than 1.44 kW (NA) Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia) |

Full system (including options)

| | B079 | B082 |
|---------------|---|---|
| Copying | Less than 1.4 kW | Less than 1.4 kW |
| Warm-up | Less than 1.3 kW | Less than 1.3 kW |
| Stand-by | Less than 170 W/h | Less than 195 W/h |
| Auto Off Mode | Ave. 8 W/h (NA) Ave. 9 W/h (EU, Asia) | Ave. 8 W/h Ave. 9 W/h (EU, Asia) |
| Maximum | Less than 1.44 kW (NA) Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia) | Less than 1.44 kW (NA) Less than 1.5 kW (EU, Asia) |

Noise Emission:

| Mode | Model | Mainframe Only | Full System |
|----------|-------|------------------|------------------|
| Copying | B079 | 69 dB(A) or less | 73 dB(A) or less |
| | B082 | 70 dB(A) or less | 74 dB(A) or less |
| Stand-by | B079 | 42 dB(A) or less | |
| | B082 | 42 dB(A) or less | |

NOTE: The above measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779. Full system measurements include the ARDF, Finisher and LCT unit. In the above stand-by condition, the polygonal mirror motor is not rotating.

2. MACHINE CONFIGURATION



- 1. Platen cover
- 2. ARDF
- 3. One-bin tray
- 4. Duplex unit
- 5. By-pass tray
- 6. LCT (Large Capacity Tray)
- 7. Copier

- 8. Paper tray unit
- 9. Two-tray finisher (2 shift trays)
- 10. Booklet Finisher
- 11. 1000 Sheet Finisher (1 shift tray)
- 12. Bridge Unit

NOTE: The Bridge Unit is required for the optional finishers.

SPECIFICATIONS

| | | Item | Key | Machine Code |
|---|----------|---|-----|---------------------------|
| | | B079 | | B079 |
| | | B082 | | B082 |
| | | ARDF (See Note 1.) | U | B541 |
| | | Platen Cover (See Note 1.) Paper Tray Unit | | G329 |
| | | Paper Tray Unit | U | B542 |
| | | LCT (Large Capacity Tray) | U | B543 |
| | | 1-Bin Tray | U | B544 |
| | | Bridge Unit | U | B538 |
| | Copier | 1000-sheet Finisher (See Note 2.) | С | B408 |
| | | Two-tray Finisher (See Note 2.) | U | B545 |
| | | Booklet Finisher | С | B546 |
| | | Punch Unit (See Note 3.) | С | B377-17 (2/3-hole) US |
| | | Punch Unit (See Note 3.) | С | B377-27 (2/4-hole) Metric |
| | | Punch Unit (See Note 3.) | С | B377-31 (4-hole) Northern |
| | | | | Europe/ |
| | | Key Counter Bracket | С | A674 |
| | | User Account Enhance Unit | С | B443 |
| | | CSS Kit A886 | С | A886 |
| _ | | Fax Option | U | B547 |
| | | G3 Interface Unit | U | B591 |
| | Fax | JBIG | С | A892 |
| | | SAF Memory | С | G578 |
| | | Handset (USA model only) | С | A646 |
| | | Printer/Scanner Unit | U | B548 |
| | | PostScript3 Unit | U | G354-17 |
| | | Network Interface Board | С | B525-03 |
| | Printer/ | 1394 Interface Unit | С | G336 |
| | Scanner | USB 2.0 Interface Board | С | B525-01 |
| | | IEEE 802.11b Wireless LAN | С | B515 |
| | | Bluetooth | С | G354-04 |
| | | Memory Unit 128 MB | С | G331 |

Key: Symbol: **U**: Unique option, **C**: Option also used with other products

- NOTE: 1) The ARDF and platen cover cannot be installed together.
 2) The finishers require the paper tray unit and bridge unit.
 3) The punch unit requires the two-tray finisher.

3. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ARDF (B541)

| Original Size: | Normal Original Mode: A3 to B6, DLT to HLT Duplex Original Mode: A3 to B5, DLT to HLT | |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Original Weight: | Normal Original Mode: 40 ~ 128 g/m ² (11 ~ 34 lb.) Duplex Original Mode: 52 ~ 105 g/m ² (14 ~ 28 lb.) | |
| Table Capacity: | 80 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | |
| Original Standard Position: | Rear left corner | |
| Separation: | Feed belt and separation roller | |
| Original Transport: | Roller transport | |
| Original Feed Order: | From the top original | |
| Reproduction Range: | 30 ~ 200% (Sub scan direction only) | |
| Power Source: | DC 24V, 5V from the copier | |
| Power Consumption: | Less than 60 W | |
| Dimensions (W × D × H): | 570 mm x 518 mm x 150 mm (22.4" x 20.4" x 5.9") | |
| Weight: | 12 kg | |

PAPER TRAY UNIT (B542)

| Paper Size: | A5 SEF to A3 SEF |
|-------------------------|--|
| | 51/2" x 81/2" SEF to 11" x 17" SEF |
| Paper Weight: | 64 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² (20 lb. ~ 28 lb.) |
| Tray Capacity: | 500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) |
| Paper Feed System: | FRR |
| Paper Height Detection: | 4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Near end) |
| Power Source: | 24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from the copier) |
| | 120 Vac: 115 V version (from the copier) |
| | 220 ~ 240 Vac: 224/240 V version (from the copier) |
| Power Consumption: | 50 W |
| Weight: | Less than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) |
| Size (W x D x H): | 540 mm x 600 mm x 270 mm (21.3" x 23.6" x 10.6") |

ONE-BIN TRAY (B544)

| Paper Size: | A5 SEF to A3 SEF |
|--------------------|--|
| | 51/2"x81/2" SEF to 11"x17" SEF |
| Paper Weight: | 60 g/m ² ~ 105 g/m ² (16 lb. ~ 28 lb.) |
| Tray Capacity: | 125 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) |
| Power Source: | 5 Vdc, 24 Vdc (from copier) |
| Power Consumption: | 15 W |
| Weight: | Less than 4 kg (8.8 lb.) |
| Size (W x D x H): | 470 mm x 565 mm x 140 mm (18.5" x 22.2" x 5.5") |

1000 Sheet Finisher (B408)

| Upper Tray | | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Paper Size | A3 to A6 | | | |
| | 11" x 17" to 51/2" x 81/2" | | | |
| Paper Weight | 60 to 157 g/m2 (16 to 42 lb.) | | | _ |
| Paper Capacity | 250 sheets, A4 LEF, 81/2" x 11" | SEF or sm | aller, 80 g/m | ² (20 lb.) |
| Lower Tray | | | | |
| Paper Size | Staple Mode Off: | | | |
| | A3 to B5, 11" x 17" to 51/2" x | 81/2" | | |
| | Staple Mode On: | | | |
| | A3, B4, A4, B5, 11° X 17° to 8 | 51/2" X 11" | | |
| Paper Weight | Staple Mode Off: 60 to 15 | o/g/m⁻(16 | ~ 43 lb.) | |
| | Staple Mode On: 64 to 90 | <u>) g/m⁻ (17 - </u> | ~ 24 lb.) | |
| Stapler Capacity | 30 sheets (A3, B4, 11" x 17", 81/ 50 sheets (A4, B5 LEF, 81/2" x 1 | 2" x 14" 1" | | |
| Paper Capacity | Staple Mode Off: | | 0 | |
| | 1,000 sheets, A4, 81/2" x 11" | or smaller, | 80 g/m ² (20 | lb.) |
| | 500 sheets, A3, B4, 11" x 17", 81/2" x 14", 80 g/m ² (20 lb.) | | | |
| | Staple Mode On: | | | |
| | 80 g/m2 (20 lb.) | | | |
| | | | | |
| | Set Size 2 to 9 10 to 50 | | | |
| | Size | | 10 to 30 | 31 to 50 |
| | A4, 81/2"x14" LEF | 100 | 100 to 20 | 100 to 20 |
| | A4, 81/2"x11" SEF | 100 | 50 to 10 | 50 to 10 |
| | A3, B4, 11"x17", 81/2""x14" | 50 | 50 to 10 | |
| Staple Positions | 1 Staple: 2 positions (Front, Rea | r) | | |
| | 2 Staples: 2 positions (Upper, Le | eft | | |
| Staple | | | | |
| | Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridge | e) | | |
| Replenishment | Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridg | e) | | |
| Replenishment Power Source | Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridg DC 24 V, 5V (from copier) | e) | | |
| Replenishment Power Source Power Consumption | Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridg DC 24 V, 5V (from copier) 50 W | e) | | |
| Replenishment Power Source Power Consumption Weight | Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridg DC 24 V, 5V (from copier) 50 W 25 kg (55.2 lb.) | e) | | |
| Replenishment Power Source Power Consumption Weight Dimensions | Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridg DC 24 V, 5V (from copier) 50 W 25 kg (55.2 lb.) 527 x 520 x 790 mm | e) | | |

TWO-TRAY FINISHER (B545) NOTE: The punch unit is an option for this machine.

| Paper Size | Normal/Shift Mode: | | | |
|-----------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | A3 to A5/DLT to HLT | | | |
| | (A6L in no shift mode and no staple mode) | | | |
| | Staple Mode: | | | |
| | A3 to B5/DL1 to L1 | | | |
| | | | | |
| | 2 Holes: A3 to A5/DL1 to HL1 | | | |
| | A Holes (Europe/Asia) : A3 to A5/ DLT to HLT | | | |
| | 4 Holes (North Europe): A3 to B5/DLT to LT | | | |
| Paper Weight | Normal/Shift Mode: $52 \text{ g/m}^2 \approx 163 \text{ g/m}^2 (14 \approx 43 \text{ lb})$ | | | |
| | Stanle Mode: | | | |
| | $64 \text{ g/m}^2 \sim 90 \text{ g/m}^2 (17 \sim 23 \text{ lb})$ | | | |
| | Punch mode (All types): | | | |
| | $52 \text{ g/m}^2 \sim 163 \text{ g/m}^2 (14 \sim 43 \text{ lb.})$ | | | |
| Tray Paper Capacity | Upper Tray: | | | |
| | 500 sheets (A4S ~ A5S/LTS, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 250 sheets (A3 ~ A4L/DLT ~ LTL, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 100 sheets (A5L/HLT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | Lower Tray (Multi-tray Staple Mode): | | | |
| | 1500 sheets (A4S/LTS, 80 g/m ⁻ , 20 lb.) 750 sheets (A2 \approx B5/DLT \approx LTL - 20 g/m ² - 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 7 SU SHEELS (A3 ~ BS/DLT ~ LTL, 80 g/m ⁻ , 20 lD.) 500 sheets (A5S, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 100 sheets (A33, 00 g/m, 20 lb.) | | | |
| | Lower Tray (Normal Mode): | | | |
| | 2000 sheets (A4S/LTS, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 750 sheets (A3 ~ B5/DLT ~ LTL, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 500 sheets (A5S, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 100 sheets (A5L/HLT, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| Stapler Tray Capacity | No Mixed Original Mode: | | | |
| | 50 sheets (A4 ~ B5/LT, 80 g/m², 20 lb.) | | | |
| | 30 sheets (A3 ~ B4/DLT ~ LG, 80 g/m ² , 20 lb.) | | | |
| | Mixed Original Mode: | | | |
| | 30 sheets (A4S/A2 BES/B4 LTS/DLT 80 a/m^2 20 lb) | | | |
| Staple Position | 4 nositions | | | |
| | 1 staple: 3 positions (Front, Rear, Rear-Slant) | | | |
| | 2 staple: 1 position | | | |
| Staple Replenishment | Cartridge (5,000 staples) | | | |
| Power Source | 24 Vdc (from copier) | | | |
| Power Consumption | 60 W | | | |
| Weight | Less than 53 kg (116.8 lb.) (without punch unit) | | | |
| | Less than 55 kg (121.3 lb.) (with punch unit) | | | |
| Size (W x D x H) | 680 mm x 620 mm x 1030 mm | | | |
| | (26.8" x 24.4" x 40.6") | | | |

Spec.

Booklet Finisher (B546)

| Paper Size | Tray | Modes | | Sizes | |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|--------|-------------|---|------------------------|
| | Proof tray | / | | A3 to A5, DLT to HLT | |
| | | No sta | ple mode | A3 to A5, DLT to HLT | |
| | | Staple | Rear | A4 SEF, LG SEF, LT SEF | |
| | | Mode | Front/Slant | A3 SEF, A4 LEF/SEF, B4 | SEF, B5 |
| | Shift | | | LEF, DLT SEF, LG SEF, L | _T LEF/SEF |
| | tray | | Rear/Slant | A3 SEF, A4 LEF, B4 SEF, DLT SEF, LT LEF | , B5 LEF, |
| | | | 2 Staple | A3 SEF, A4, LEF, B4 SEF DLT SEF, LT LEF | , B5 LEF, |
| | Booklet | Staple | Mode | A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF | , DLT SEF, |
| | tray | | | LT SEF | |
| | | | | | |
| Paper Weight | | Tra | у | Weight | |
| | Stack mo | de | | 52 g/m ² to 163 g/m ² , 14 to | 942 lb |
| | Staple mode Saddle stitch mode | | | 64 g/m ² to 80 g/m ² , 17 to 2 | 21 lb |
| | | | de | 64 g/m ² to 80 g/m ² , 17 to 21 lb | |
| | | | | 64 g/m ² to 128 g/m ² , 17 to 34 lb | |
| | | | | (Cover sheet only) | |
| | | | | | |
| Paper Capacity ' | Tra | у | Modes | Paper size | Capacity |
| | | | | A4 LEF, L1 LEF or | 150 sheets |
| | Proof tray | | | | 75 obooto |
| | | | | A4 SEF, LI SEF 0 | 75 sheets |
| | | | | | 1000 |
| | | | No staple | shorter | sheets |
| | | | | A4 SEE LT SEE or | 500 sheet |
| | | | | longer | |
| | Shift trov | | | A4 LEF, LT LEF or | 750 |
| | Shint tray | | | shorter | sheets, or |
| | | | | | 30 sets * ² |
| | | | | A4 SEF, LT SEF or | 500 |
| | | | Staple | longer | sheets, or |
| | | | | | 30 sets ** |
| | Destruct | | | 1-5 sheets | 25 sets |
| | Booklet tray | | | 6-10 sheets | 15 sets |
| | | | | 11-15 sheets | 10 sets |

*¹ 80 g/m², 20 lb
*² Setting DIP SW 3 No. 5 to ON releases the 30 set limit.

| Staple Capacity | Modes | Paper size | Total capacity | |
|----------------------|---|----------------------------------|----------------|--|
| | Staple | A4 LEF, LT LEF or shorter | 50 sheets | |
| | Staple | A4 SEF, LT SEF or longer | 30 sheets | |
| | Saddle stitch | | 15 sheets | |
| Staple Position | Staple mode: 4 | positions | | |
| | 1 staple: 3 p | ositions (Rear, Front/Slant, Rea | ar/Slant) | |
| | 2 staples: 1 | position | | |
| | Saddle stitch mode: 2 positions, 2 staples (center), fixed position | | | |
| Staple Replenishment | Cartridge | | | |
| | Staple: 5000 staples | | | |
| | Saddle stitch: 2000 staples | | | |
| Power Source | 24 Vdc (from copier) | | | |
| Power Consumption | Less than 170 W | | | |
| Dimensions | 689 x 603 x 1055 mm | | | |
| (w x d x h) | 27.1 x 23.7 x 41.5 in. | | | |
| Weight: | 49 kg (107.8 lb.) | | | |

^{*1} 80 g/m², 20 lb

BRIDGE UNIT (B538)

| Paper Size | Standard sizes | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| | A6 lengthwise to A3 | |
| | HLT to DLT | |
| | Non-standard sizes | |
| | Width: 100 to 305 mm | |
| | Length: 148 to 432 mm | |
| Paper Weight | 52 g/m² ~ 135 g/m², 16 lb. ~ 42 lb. | |

LCT (B543)

| Paper Size | A4 (S)/LT (S) |
|---------------------------|---|
| Paper Weight | 60 g/m² ~ 105 g/m², 16 lb. ~ 28 lb. |
| Tray Capacity | 1500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20lb.) |
| Remaining Paper Detection | 5 steps (100%, 75%, 50%, 25%, Near end) |
| Power Source | 24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from copier) |
| Power Consumption | 40 W |
| Weight | Less than 17 kg (37.5 lb.) |
| Size (W x D x H) | 390 mm x 500 mm x 390 mm |
| | (15.4" x 19.7" x 15.4") |

APPENDIX 1 (FOR MODEL A-C3)

1. RSS (REMOTE SERVICE SYSTEM)

1.1 RSS SET UP



CAUTION Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

NOTE: This manual uses the following symbols.

- 1. Remove the rear upper cover [A] ($\hat{P} \times 2$).
- 2. Remove the rear lower cover [B] ($\hat{\mathscr{F}} \times 4$).
- 3. Remove the CSS cover [C] ($\hat{\beta}^2 \times 1$).
- 4. Remove the bracket [D] ($\hat{\beta}^2 \times 4$).
- 5. Install the RSS board [E] (²/_k x 3).
- 6. Install the harness [F] between the RSS board and the Mother board.

When connecting only one machine to the line adapter, skips step 7.

7. Set the jumper switch [G] on the RSS board as shown (default setting is 1-2).



B079X902.WMF



B079X903.WMF

| Machine No. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|----------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Jumper Set | 2-3 | 2-3 | 2-3 | 2-3 | 1-2 |
| PI device code | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

- 8. Reassemble the machine.
- 9. Connect the modular cord [A] to the line adapter as shown.
- 10. Install the line adapter (refer to chapter 2-1 L-ADP Installation Procedure in the CSS Service Manual).
- 11. Turn on the machine.

When connecting only one machine to the line adapter, skips step 12.

12. Enter the Copier SP mode and set the PI device code with SP5-821 (default 0). **NOTE:** After changing the value, turn the main power switch off and on to enable the PI device code.

1.2 SP MODE SETTING

After installing the machine and line adapter, perform SP5-816-1 (CSS Function On/Off).

Check the value of the following SP modes. Ensure they are set correctly.

NOTE: SP5-507 is only for the Japanese version. Do not change.

- SP5-501-1 (PM Alarm Interval): 150k
- SP5-504 (Jam Alarm Setting): 3
- SP5-508-1 (CE Call Jam Level 1): 1 (On)
- SP5-508-2 (CE Call Jam Level 2): 1 (On)
- SP5-508-3 (CE Call Cover Open): 1 (On)

1.3 CHECKING ITEMS USING RSS

1.3.1 READ ONLY ITEMS

| | ltem | | |
|--|--|--|--|
| Paper end | | | |
| Paper jam infor | mation | | |
| Staple end | | | |
| Toner end | | | |
| Toner near end | | | |
| Door open | | | |
| Unit connection | condition (Fusing and PCU) | | |
| Paper size info | rmation | | |
| System configu | ration | | |
| Vsg, Vsp, Vsdp | , Vt data | | |
| Copy counter for | Copy counter for user codes | | |
| Fax information (Total No. of Tx, Total No. of Rx etc) | | | |
| The related SP modes are; | | | |
| SP - * | P - * 2223 - 001~002, 3103 - 001~003 | | |
| SP7 - * | 002 - 001~005, 003 - 003~004, 004 - 002, 206 - 001~002, 833 - 001~005 | | |
| SP7 - * - 001 | SP7 - * - 001 001, 003, 101, 204~205, 301, 304~305, 320~328, 401, 402, 502~507, 801, 803 | | |
| SP7 - 506 - * | SP7 - 506 - * 005~006, 014, 038, 044, 132~133, 134, 141~142, 160, 164, 166, 172, 255 | | |
| SP8 - * - 001 | 001~007, 011~017, 021~027, 111, 121, 131, 141, 151, 161, 191~193, 195~196, 205, 211~213, 215~216, 251, 291, 381~384, 386~387, 391, 401~404, 411, 531, 633, 643, 651, 661, 671, 781, 831, 901, 911 | | |

1.3.2 AUTO CALL AND READ ITEMS

SC Calls

The SC calls are generated according to the SC level as follows. Please note that the SC level of this copier is defined differently from the other copiers.

| SC Level | Definition | SC Auto Call Condition |
|----------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ^ | Fuser unit SCs which cannot be | SC call is generated immediately |
| ~ | reset by customer. | |
| | SCs caused by incorrect sensor | SC call is generated when SC occurs |
| в | detection which can be reset by | two times within 10 copies. |
| D | turning main power switch off and | |
| | on. | |
| C | SCs that disable only the features | SC call is generated when SC occurs |
| C | which use the defective item. | two times within 10 copies. |
| П | SCs that are not shown on the | SC call is not generated. |
| U | operation panel. | |

CC Calls

There are three types of CC calls as follows:

| CC Code | Definition |
|---------|--|
| CC 101 | When paper jam is detected five times consecutively without completing any copy job, a CC101 is automatically generated. |
| CC 201 | When a paper jam condition is not reset for 15 minutes, CC201 is automatically generated. |
| CC 202 | When a cover open condition is not reset for 15 minutes, CC202 is automatically generated. |

Alarm Calls

There are four types of Alarm Calls as follows:

| Туре | Definition |
|-------------------|---|
| PM | When the PM counter reaches 80000, a PM Alarm Call is automatically reported to the Concorde system. |
| Original Count | Alarm call is generated after the specified total number of originals goes through the ARDF. |
| SC | When 3 SCs (Any level) occur during 1500 sheets copying, an SC Alarm Call is automatically reported to the Concorde system. |
| Jam | When paper jamming occurs 10 times during 1000 sheets copying, a Jam Alarm Call is automatically reported to the Concorde system. |

1.3.3 READ AND WRITE ITEMS

All data for SP modes and UP modes except few modes.

1.3.4 EXECUTE ITEMS

| ltem | |
|---|--|
| PM Counter Reset | |
| SC/Jam Counter Rest | |
| Counters Reset (all except total counter) | |
| Total ADF Counter | |
| Print Counter – Paper Tray Bypass | |
| Print Counter – Paper Tray 1 | |
| Print Counter – Paper Tray 2 | |
| Print Counter – Paper Tray 3 | |
| Print Counter – Paper Tray 4 | |
| Print Counter – Paper Tray LCT | |

1.4 JAM HISTORY

The jam history is read in this way.



B079X904.WMF
1.4.1 JAM CONDITION TABLE

Copier

| Code | Meaning | | | |
|------|---|--|--|--|
| 01 | Jams at power on. | | | |
| 03 | Paper does not reach the 1st Paper Feed Sensor | | | |
| 04 | Paper does not reach the 2nd Paper Feed Sensor | | | |
| 05 | Paper does not reach the 3rd Paper Feed Sensor | | | |
| 06 | Paper does not reach the 4th Paper Feed Sensor | | | |
| 07 | Paper does not reach the LCT Tray Relay Sensor | | | |
| 08 | Paper does not reach the Transport sensor 1 | | | |
| 09 | Paper does not reach the Transport sensor 2 | | | |
| 10 | Paper does not reach the Transport sensor 3 | | | |
| 13 | Paper does not reach the Registration Sensor | | | |
| 14 | Paper does not reach the Fusing Exit Sensor | | | |
| 16 | Paper does not reach the Exit Entrance Sensor | | | |
| 17 | Paper does not reach the Relay Sensor 1 (option) | | | |
| 18 | Paper does not reach the Relay Sensor 2 (option) | | | |
| 19 | Paper does not reach the Duplex Entrance Sensor | | | |
| 23 | Paper does not reach the Duplex Exit Sensor | | | |
| 24 | Paper does not reach the 1-Bin Tray Sensor | | | |
| 25 | Paper does not reach the Finisher Entrance | | | |
| 26 | Paper does not reach the Finisher Proof Tray | | | |
| 27 | Paper does not reach the Finisher Shift Tray | | | |
| 28 | Paper does not reach the Finisher Staple Tray | | | |
| 29 | Paper does not reach the Meilbey Entrance Sensor | | | |
| 30 | Paper does not reach the Mailbox Entrance Sensor | | | |
| 32 | Paper does not reach the Mailbox Proof Tray Exit Sensor | | | |
| 33 | Paper does not reach the Mailbox Exit Sensor | | | |
| 35 | Paper does not reach the Booklet Einisher (Janan Only) | | | |
| 36 | i aper does not reach the Booker i moner (oupan emy) | | | |
| 37 | | | | |
| 38 | | | | |
| 39 | | | | |
| 40 | | | | |
| 41 | | | | |
| 57 | Paper caught at the LCT Tray Relay Sensor | | | |
| 58 | Paper caught at the Transport sensor 1 | | | |
| 59 | Paper caught at the Transport sensor 2 | | | |
| 60 | Paper caught at the Transport sensor 3 | | | |
| 61 | Paper caught at the Transport sensor 4 | | | |
| 63 | Paper caught at the Registration Sensor | | | |
| 64 | Paper caught at the Fusing Exit Sensor | | | |
| 66 | Paper caught at the Exit Entrance Sensor | | | |
| 67 | Paper caught at the Relay Sensor 1 (option) | | | |
| 68 | Paper caught at the Relay Sensor 2 (option) | | | |
| 69 | Paper caught at the Duplex Entrance Sensor | | | |
| 73 | Paper caught at the Duplex Exit Sensor | | | |
| 74 | Paper caught at the 1-Bin Tray Sensor | | | |

Document Feeder

| Code | Meaning | | | |
|------|--|--|--|--|
| 03 | Original does not reach the Skew Correction Sensor | | | |
| 04 | Original does not reach the Interval Sensor | | | |
| 05 | Original does not reach the Registration Sensor | | | |
| 06 | Original does not reach the Relay Sensor | | | |
| 07 | Original does not reach the Inverter Sensor | | | |
| 53 | Original caught at the Skew Correction Sensor | | | |
| 54 | Original caught at the Interval Sensor | | | |
| 55 | Original caught at the Registration Sensor | | | |
| 56 | Original caught at the Relay Sensor | | | |
| 57 | Original caught at the Inverter Sensor | | | |

1.4.2 PAPER SIZE

| Code | Paper Size | Code | Paper Size |
|------|---------------------------|------|-----------------------------|
| 05 | A4 sideways | 86 | A5 lengthwise |
| 06 | A5 sideways | 87 | A6 lengthwise |
| 07 | A6 sideways | 8D | B4 |
| 0E | B5 sideways | 8E | B5 lengthwise |
| 0F | B6 sideways | 8F | B6 lengthwise |
| 11 | Return post card sideways | 91 | Return post card lengthwise |
| 12 | Post card sideways | 92 | Post card lengthwise |
| 24 | 8.5" x 14" sideways | A0 | 11" x 17" |
| 26 | 8.5" x 11" sideways | A4 | 8.5" x 14" lengthwise |
| 2C | 8.5" x 5.5" sideways | A6 | 8.5" x 11" lengthwise |
| 84 | A3 | AC | 8.5" x 5.5" lengthwise |
| 85 | A4 lengthwise | | |

1.5 OTHERS

1.5.1 SC630 [RDS COMMUNICATION ERROR]

Frequent occurrence of SC630 indicates a problem in the customer's communication line or line adapter. To maintain the communications environment in good working order, it is necessary to contact planned inspections periodically.

1.5.2 PM PROCEDURE OR OTHER MAINTENANCE

Before beginning PM or other maintenance procedures, SP5-816-2 should be set to "0". This will disable the RDS function. When maintenance is completed, SP5-816-2 should be set to "1". This will re-enable the RDS function.

NOTE: The RDS function will remain disabled for four hours. Therefore, if maintenance for longer than four hours is required, SP5-816-2 should be set to "0" again to disable RDS.